# Foundations of Stochastic Analysis 

Ben Hambly and Zhongmin Qian
Mathematical Institute, University of Oxford

September 25, 2019

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 1
2 Preliminaries ..... 5
2.1 Toolbox ..... 5
2.1.1 The monotone class theorem ..... 5
2.2 Probability spaces ..... 5
2.3 Conditional expectations ..... 9
2.4 Uniform integrability ..... 10
3 Elements of martingale theory ..... 15
3.1 Martingales in discrete-time ..... 15
3.2 Doob's inequalities ..... 18
3.3 The convergence theorem ..... 24
3.4 Martingales in continuous-time ..... 27
3.5 Local martingales ..... 32
3.5.1 Stopping times ..... 33
3.5.2 The technique of localization ..... 35
4 Brownian motion ..... 39
4.1 Construction of Brownian motion ..... 39
4.1.1 Scaling properties ..... 44
4.1.2 Markov property and finite-dimensional distributions ..... 46
4.1.3 The reflection principle ..... 50
4.1.4 Martingale property ..... 52
4.2 The quadratic variation process ..... 54
5 Itô calculus ..... 61
5.1 Introduction ..... 61
5.2 Stochastic integrals for simple processes ..... 65
5.3 Stochastic integrals for adapted processes ..... 69
5.3.1 The space of square-integrable martingales ..... 69
5.3.2 Stochastic integrals as martingales ..... 71
5.3.3 Summary of main properties ..... 74
5.4 Itô's integration for semi-martingales ..... 75
5.5 Ito's formula ..... 78
5.5.1 Itô's formula for BM ..... 80
5.5.2 Proof of Itô's formula. ..... 80
5.6 Selected applications of Itô's formula ..... 81
5.6.1 Lévy's characterization of Brownian motion ..... 81
5.6.2 Time-changes of Brownian motion ..... 83
5.6.3 Stochastic exponentials ..... 83
5.6.4 Exponential inequality ..... 88
5.6.5 Girsanov's theorem ..... 89
5.7 The martingale representation theorem ..... 92
6 Stochastic differential equations ..... 97
6.1 Introduction ..... 97
6.2 Several examples ..... 99
6.2.1 Linear-Gaussian diffusions ..... 99
6.2.2 Geometric Brownian motion ..... 101
6.2.3 The Cameron-Martin formula ..... 103
6.3 Existence and uniqueness ..... 105
6.3.1 Strong solutions: existence and uniqueness ..... 105
6.3.2 Continuity in the initial conditions ..... 110
6.4 Martingales and weak solutions ..... 111

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

In these notes our aim will be to build the background stochastic analysis to enable the development of the theory of stochastic differential equations. A stochastic differential equation is simply an ordinary differential equation perturbed by random noise. If we take the view of approximating the ODE

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(t, x),
$$

by a difference equation we can think of the evolution in time of a deterministic system as

$$
x_{t+\Delta t}=x_{t}+f\left(t, x_{t}\right) \Delta t .
$$

In order to add noise we can imagine introducing a random shock at each time step with a size that may depend on the current value and time. Thus the solution will become a random variable and should satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{t+\Delta t}=X_{t}+f\left(t, X_{t}\right) \Delta t+\sigma\left(t, X_{t}\right) \Delta W_{t}, \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\Delta W_{t}$ an independent random variable generated for each time step $\Delta t$.
If we were to write (1.1) in differential form we would have the following

$$
\frac{d X_{t}}{d t}=f\left(t, X_{t}\right)+\sigma\left(t, X_{t}\right) \frac{d W_{t}}{d t} .
$$

How do we make sense of the final term? Before taking the limit, if we write $W_{t}=\sum_{i} \Delta W_{t_{i}}$ we see that $W$ is a random walk with steps determined by the distribution of $\Delta W$. In order to put everything on the right timescale it is natural for the random walk to move a unit distance in a unit time so from the central limit theorem we should take the variance of $\Delta W_{t}$ to be $\Delta t$. This suggests that $\dot{W}_{t}=d W_{t} / d t$ should have an 'infinitesimal'
normal distribution. Such a random noise can be modelled by Brownian motion $\left(W_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, a mathematical model developed to describe the random movements of pollen particles in a liquid, as observed by Robert Brown in 1827. The mathematical model for Brownian motion and the description of its distribution were derived by Albert Einstein in a short paper "On the motion of small particles suspended in liquids at rest required by the molecular-kinetic theory of heat" published in 1905, Annalen der Physik 17, 549-560. About the same time, in 1900, L. Bachelier submitted his Ph. D. thesis in which he used Brownian motion to model price movements in the stock market. His results were published in a paper titled "Théorie de la spéculation" in Ann. Sci. Ecole Norm. sup ., 17 (1900), 21-86, which is the first paper devoted to applications of Brownian motion to finance.

On the other hand, the first mathematical construction of Brownian motion had to wait until 1923 when Norbert Wiener published his article "Differential space", J. Math. Phys. 2, 132-174. After this the unusual features of Brownian motion were revealed, mainly by Paul Lévy, in the 1930's - 40's. Among them, Lévy showed that almost surely $t \rightarrow W_{t}$ is nowhere differentiable, and therefore the time-derivative of Brownian motion, $\dot{W}_{t}$, does not exist. It is thus customary to rewrite the previous differential equation as an infinitesimal evolution

$$
\mathrm{d} X_{t}=f\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} t+\sigma\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{t}
$$

which in turn has to be interpreted as an integral equation

$$
X_{t}-X_{0}=\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s+\int_{0}^{t} \sigma\left(s, X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{s} .
$$

In order to make sense of this we require a definition for the stochastic integral

$$
\int \sigma\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{t} .
$$

The construction of such an integral is non-trivial and it was Kiyosi Itô in the 1940's who first established an integration theory for Brownian motion, and therefore the theory of stochastic differential equations. There are many powerful applications of the theory, both within and outside mathematics itself. One of the most remarkable applications of Itô's theory is to finance. Itô's theory was brought to worldwide attention by the award to Harry Markowitz, William Sharpe and Merton Miller of the 1990 Nobel Prize, and Robert Merton and Myron Scholes of the 1997 Nobel Prize, both in Economics. Itô was awarded the Gauss prize in 2010 in recognition of the
extent to which his work had influenced applications of mathematics in many disciplines.

These notes provide the core part of Itô's calculus: it provides the necessary background in stochastic analysis for those who are interested in stochastic models and their applications.

## References:

Below is a list of text books and monographs on stochastic differential equations and related topics.

1. N. Ikeda and S. Watanabe: Stochastic Differential Equations and Diffusion Processes. North-Holland (1981).
2. I. Karatzas and S. E. Shreve: Brownian Motion and Stochastic Calculus. Graduate Texts in Mathematics, Springer-Verlag (1988).
3. F. C. Klebaner: Introduction to Stochastic Calculus with Applications. Imperial College Press (1998).
4. B. Oksendal: Stochastic Differential Equations. 6th Edition, Universitetext. Springer (2003).
5. D. Revuz and M. Yor: Continuous Martingales and Brownian Motion. Springer-Verlag (1991).
6. L. C. G. Rogers and D. Williams: Diffusions, Markov Processes and Martingales, Volume 2 Itô Calculus. Cambridge Mathematical Library. Cambridge University Press (2000).
7. S. E. Shreve: Stochastic Calculus Finance II Continuous-Time Models. Springer Finance Textbook. Springer (2004).
8. O. Kallenberg: Foundations of Modern Probability, 2nd Edition. Springer (2002),

## Chapter 2

## Preliminaries

### 2.1 Toolbox

### 2.1.1 The monotone class theorem

A collection $\mathcal{B}$ of subsets of $\Omega$ is called a $\pi$-system, if it is closed under finite intersections. By the monotone class theorem, we mean the following lemma or a version of it.

Lemma 2.1.1 Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a $\pi$-system, and $\mathcal{F}=\sigma\{\mathcal{B}\}$ the smallest $\sigma$-algebra containing it. Let $\mathcal{H}$ be a family of real-valued functions on $\Omega$ satisfying the following two conditions:

1. $1 \in \mathcal{H}$ and $1_{A} \in \mathcal{H}$ for every $A \in \mathcal{B}$.
2. If $f_{n} \in \mathcal{H}$, each $f_{n}$ is non-negative, $f_{n} \uparrow$ (in $n$ ), and $\sup _{n} f_{n}<+\infty$, then $\sup _{n} f_{n} \in \mathcal{H}$.

Then $\mathcal{H}$ contains all bounded, real-valued and $\mathcal{F}$-measurable functions on $\Omega$.

### 2.2 Probability spaces

A probability space is a triple $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ consisting of a sample space $\Omega$ of basic events (also called sample points), a $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{F}$ of events, and a probability measure $P$. The probability measure $P$ is a function on $\mathcal{F}$ taking values in $[0,1]$, which satisfies the following conditions:

1. $P(\Omega)=1, P(\emptyset)=0$ (where $\emptyset$ is the empty set), and $P(A) \geq 0$ for any event $A \in \mathcal{F}$.
2. Countably additivity: If $\left\{A_{i}\right\}_{i=1, \ldots}$ is a countable family of mutually disjoint events, i.e. $A_{i} \in \mathcal{F}$ and $A_{i} \cap A_{j}=\emptyset$, then

$$
P\left(\cup_{i=1}^{\infty} A_{i}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} P\left(A_{i}\right) .
$$

By a random variable on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ taking values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ (or an $\mathbb{R}^{d}$-valued random variable), we mean a measurable (vector-valued) function on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$. Recall that mapping $X: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$ is measurable, if for every Borel subset $B$ of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, the pre-image of $B$ under the map $X$

$$
X^{-1}(B)=\{\omega: X(\omega) \in B\}
$$

belongs to $\mathcal{F}$. Loosely speaking, a random variable is a function $X$ on $\Omega$ with the property that we can determine the probabilities of events of interest, such as for example, the probability that $X$ lies in a ball $B$ : ie we can assign a probability to the set $\{\omega \in \Omega: X(\omega) \in B\}$.

If

$$
E|X| \equiv \int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)| P(d \omega)<\infty
$$

then we say $X$ is integrable, denoted by $X \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. In this case, the expectation of $X$, denoted by $E(X)$, is the integral of $X$ against the probability measure $P$ :

$$
E(X) \equiv \int_{\Omega} X(\omega) P(d \omega)
$$

In general, a random variable $X \in L^{p}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ for $p \geq 0$, if

$$
\int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)|^{p} P(d \omega)<\infty
$$

In this case, we also say $X$ has finite $p$-th moment or is $L^{p}$-integrable. For $p \geq 1$, the space $L^{p}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ of all random variables $X$ with finite $p$-th moment is a Banach space under the usual algebraic operations for functions and the $L^{p}$-norm

$$
\|X\|_{L^{p}} \equiv\left(\int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)|^{p} P(d \omega)\right)^{1 / p}
$$

Remark 2.2.1 If $p \geq q$, then $L^{p}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P) \subset L^{q}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ and $\|X\|_{q} \leq$ $\|X\|_{p}$. Therefore $p \rightarrow\|X\|_{p}$ is increasing in $p \in(0, \infty]$. Indeed, by a simple use of Hölder's inequality we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|X\|_{q}^{q} & =\int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)|^{q} P(d \omega) \\
& \leq\left(\int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)|^{q^{\frac{p}{q}}} P(d \omega)\right)^{q / p} \\
& =\left(\int_{\Omega}|X(\omega)|^{p} P(d \omega)\right)^{q / p}
\end{aligned}
$$

Stochastic processes are mathematical models which are used to describe random phenomena evolving in time. We thus need to have a set $\mathbf{T}$ for the time-parameter. In these lectures, $\mathbf{T}$ is either the set of non-negative integers $\mathbb{Z}^{+}$or the semi-infinite real interval $[0,+\infty)$. $\mathbf{T}$ is thus an ordered set endowed with the natural topology.

Definition 2.2.2 $A$ stochastic process is a parametrized family $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ of random variables taking values in a topological space $S$. In these notes, unless otherwise specified, $S$ will be the real line $\mathbb{R}$, or the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ of dimension d.

A stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ may be considered as a function from $\mathbf{T} \times \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$, which is the reason why a stochastic process is also called a random function.

For each sample point $\omega \in \Omega$, the function $t \rightarrow X_{t}(\omega)$ from $\mathbf{T}$ to $S$ is called a sample path (or a trajectory, or a sample function). Naturally, a stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ is continuous (resp. right-continuous, rightcontinuous with left-limits) if the sample paths $t \rightarrow X_{t}(\omega)$ are continuous (resp. right-continuous, right-continuous with left-limits) for almost all $\omega \in$ $\Omega$.

Remark 2.2.3 A function $f:(a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$ is right-continuous at $t_{0} \in(a, b)$ if its right-limit at $t_{0}$ exists and equals $f\left(t_{0}\right)$. Similarly, $f$ is right-continuous with left-limit at $t_{0}$, if $f$ is right-continuous at $t_{0}$ and its left-limit at $t_{0}$ exists. For example, any monotone function on an interval has right- and left-limits.

Example 2.2.4 (Poisson process) Let $\left(\xi_{n}\right)$ be a sequence of independent identically distributed (i.i.d.) random variables with the Poisson distribution
of intensity $\lambda>0$. Let

$$
T_{0}=0 ; \quad T_{n}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} \xi_{j}
$$

and, for every $t \geq 0$ define

$$
X_{t}=n \quad \text { if } \quad T_{n} \leq t<T_{n+1} .
$$

Then for every sample point $\omega, t \rightarrow X_{t}(\omega)$ is a step function, constant on each interval $\left(T_{n}, T_{n+1}\right)$, with jump 1 at (random time) $T_{n}$, and is rightcontinuous with left limit $n-1$ at $T_{n}$.

Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a stochastic process taking values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and collection of times $0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{n}$, the joint distribution of the random variables $\left(X_{t_{1}}, \cdots, X_{t_{n}}\right)$ is specified by

$$
\mu_{t_{1}, t_{2}, \cdots, t_{n}}\left(\mathrm{~d} x_{1}, \cdots, \mathrm{~d} x_{n}\right)=P\left(X_{t_{1}} \in \mathrm{~d} x_{1}, \cdots, X_{t_{n}} \in \mathrm{~d} x_{n}\right),
$$

a probability measure on $\mathbb{R}^{d} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{R}^{d}$. These are called the finite-dimensional distributions of $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. If $d=1$ and $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a real stochastic process, the distribution $\mu_{t_{1}, t_{2}, \cdots, t_{n}}$ is determined via its distribution function

$$
F_{t_{1}, t_{2}, \cdots, t_{n}}\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{n}\right)=P\left(X_{t_{1}} \leq x_{1}, \cdots, X_{t_{n}} \leq x_{n}\right)
$$

We need to overcome some technical difficulties when we deal with stochastic processes in continuous-time. For example, a subset of $\Omega$ such as

$$
\left\{\omega \in \Omega: X_{t}(\omega) \in B \text { for all } t \in[0,1]\right\}
$$

may be not measurable, i.e. not an event, so that

$$
P\left(\omega \in \Omega: X_{t}(\omega) \in B \text { for all } t \in[0,1]\right)
$$

may not make sense, unless additional conditions on $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ are imposed. Similarly, a function such as $\sup _{t \in K} X_{t}$, which is often of interest, may be not a random variable.

Exercise 2.2.5 Let $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a stochastic process in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$, and let $B$ be a Borel measurable subset of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. If $F$ is a finite or countable subset of $[0,+\infty)$, then

$$
\left\{\omega: X_{t}(\omega) \in B \text { for any } t \in F\right\}
$$

and

$$
\sup _{t \in F}\left|X_{t}\right|
$$

are measurable.

To avoid such technical difficulties, a common condition, which is good enough to include a large class of interesting stochastic processes, is that the process $X$ is right-continuous with left limits almost surely, and the probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is complete in the sense that any trivial subsets of probability null sets are events.

An important task in stochastic analysis is the study of the probabilities (or distributional properties) of random functions determined by their finitedimensional distributions.

Definition 2.2.6 Two stochastic processes $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $Y=\left(Y_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ are equivalent (indistinguishable) if for every $t \geq 0$ we have

$$
P\left\{\omega: X_{t}(\omega)=Y_{t}(\omega)\right\}=1 .
$$

In this case, $\left(Y_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a version of $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$.
By definition, the family of finite-dimensional distributions of a stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is unique up to equivalence of processes.

On the other hand, in many practical situations, we are given a collection of compatible finite dimensional distributions $\mathcal{D}=\left\{\mu_{t_{1}, \cdots, t_{n}}\right.$, for $\left.t_{1}<\cdots<t_{n}, t_{j} \in \mathbf{T}\right\}$, we would like to construct a stochastic model $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ on some probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ so that the family of finite dimensional distributions determined by $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ coincides with the family $\mathcal{D}$ of distributions. In this case, $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in \mathbf{T}}$ is called a realization of $\mathcal{D}$.

### 2.3 Conditional expectations

Many important concepts in probability theory, including independence, the martingale property and the Markov property, are stated in terms of conditional expectations (and conditional probability). We follow the formulation of these ideas due to J.L. Doob.

Let $X$ be an integrable or non-negative random variable on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, and let $\mathcal{G}$ be a sub $\sigma$-algebra of $\mathcal{F}$. The conditional expectation $E(X \mid \mathcal{G})$ of $X$ given $\mathcal{G}$ is a random variable (unique almost surely) which satisfies the following two conditions.

1. $E(X \mid \mathcal{G})$ is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{G}$; and
2. For any $A \in \mathcal{G}$ we have

$$
E\left\{E(X \mid \mathcal{G}) 1_{A}\right\}=E\left\{X 1_{A}\right\} .
$$

The conditional expectation $E(X \mid \mathcal{G})$ is the best $L^{2}$-predictor of the random variable $X$ based on the available information $\mathcal{G}$. By a monotone class argument, it follows that

$$
E\{E(X \mid \mathcal{G}) Y\}=E(X Y)
$$

as long as both sides make sense.
For simplicity, we write $E(X \mid Y)$ for $E(X \mid \sigma(Y))$, where $\sigma(Y)$ is the smallest $\sigma$-algebra with respect to which $Y$ is measurable. It can be shown that $E(X \mid Y)$ is a measurable function of $Y$, that is there is a function $F$ such that

$$
E(X \mid Y)=F(Y)
$$

By definition, if $Y$ is $\mathcal{G}$-measurable, then

$$
E(Y X \mid \mathcal{G})=Y E(X \mid \mathcal{G})
$$

If $X$ and $\mathcal{G}$ are independent, then

$$
E(X \mid \mathcal{G})=E(X) .
$$

Indeed $X$ is independent of $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{G}$ if and only if for any bounded Borel measurable function $f$

$$
E(f(X) \mid \mathcal{G})=E(f(X))
$$

### 2.4 Uniform integrability

The uniform integrability of a family of integrable random variables has been formulated to handle the convergence of random variables in $L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. In spirit, it is very close to the ideas of uniform convergence and uniform continuity.

If $\xi$ is integrable, i.e. $\xi \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, then

$$
\lim _{N \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P=0
$$

We now make this definition uniform over a family of random variables in the following way.

Definition 2.4.1 Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a family of integrable random variables on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable if

$$
\lim _{N \rightarrow \infty} \sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| d P=0 .
$$

That is, $E\left\{1_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi|\right\}$ tends to zero uniformly on $\mathcal{A}$ as $N \rightarrow \infty$.

In terms of $\varepsilon-\delta$ language, $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable, if for any $\varepsilon>0$ there is an $N>0$ depending only on $\varepsilon$ such that

$$
\int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P<\varepsilon
$$

for all $\xi \in \mathcal{A}$.
Some simple consequences of the definition are the following.

1. Any finite family of integrable random variables is uniformly integrable.
2. Let $\mathcal{A} \subset L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ be a family of integrable random variables. If there is an integrable random variable $\eta$ such that $|\xi| \leq \eta$ for every $\xi \in \mathcal{A}$, then $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable. In fact

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq \int_{\{\eta \geq N\}} \eta \mathrm{d} P \rightarrow 0 \text { as } N \rightarrow \infty .
$$

3. If $\mathcal{A} \subset L^{p}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ for some $p>1$ and

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} E|\xi|^{p}<\infty,
$$

then $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable. That is, a bounded subset of $L^{p}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ for $p>1$ is uniformly integrable. Indeed

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P & \leq \sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}} \frac{1}{N^{p-1}}|\xi|^{p} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& \leq \frac{1}{N^{p-1}} \sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} E|\xi|^{p} \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

as $N \rightarrow \infty$.
4. If $\xi \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, and $\left\{\mathcal{G}_{\alpha}\right\}_{\alpha \in A}$ is a collection of sub $\sigma$-algebras of $\mathcal{F}$, then the family

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{E\left(\xi \mid \mathcal{G}_{\alpha}\right): \alpha \in A\right\}
$$

is uniformly integrable. Let $\xi_{\alpha}=E\left(\xi \mid \mathcal{G}_{\alpha}\right)$. Since $\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \geq N\right\}$ and
$\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \leq-N\right\}$ are $\mathcal{G}_{\alpha}$-measurable,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\left\{\left|\xi_{\alpha}\right| \geq N\right\}}\left|\xi_{\alpha}\right| \mathrm{d} P & =\int_{\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \geq N\right\}} \xi_{\alpha} \mathrm{d} P-\int_{\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \leq-N\right\}} \xi_{\alpha} \mathrm{d} P \\
& =\int_{\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \geq N\right\}} \xi \mathrm{d} P-\int_{\left\{\xi_{\alpha} \leq-N\right\}} \xi \mathrm{d} P \\
& =\int_{\left\{\left|\xi_{\alpha}\right| \geq N\right\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \\
& \leq \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P
\end{aligned}
$$

which proves the claim.
Theorem 2.4.2 Let $\mathcal{A} \subset L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Then $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable if and only if

1. $\mathcal{A}$ is a bounded subset of $L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, that is, $\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} E|\xi|<\infty$.
2. For any $\varepsilon>0$ there is $a \delta>0$ such that

$$
\int_{A}|\xi| d P \leq \varepsilon
$$

whenever $A \in \mathcal{F}$ and $P(A) \leq \delta$.
Proof. Necessity. For any $A \in \mathcal{F}$ and $N>0$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{A}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P & =\int_{A \cap\{|\xi|<N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P+\int_{A \cap\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \\
& \leq N P(A)+\int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P .
\end{aligned}
$$

Given $\varepsilon>0$, choose $N>0$ such that

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} .
$$

Then

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{A}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq N P(A)+\frac{\varepsilon}{2}
$$

for any $A \in \mathcal{F}$. In particular

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{\Omega}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq N+\frac{\varepsilon}{2},
$$

and by setting $\delta=\varepsilon /(2 N)$ we also have

$$
\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} \int_{A}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq \varepsilon
$$

as long as $P(A) \leq \delta$.
Sufficiency. Let $\beta=\sup _{\xi \in \mathcal{A}} E|\xi|$. By the Markov inequality

$$
P(|\xi| \geq N) \leq \frac{\beta}{N}
$$

for any $N>0$. For any $\varepsilon>0$, there is a $\delta>0$ such that the inequality in 2 holds. Choose $N=\beta / \delta$. Then $P(|\xi| \geq N) \leq \delta$ so that

$$
\int_{\{|\xi| \geq N\}}|\xi| \mathrm{d} P \leq \varepsilon
$$

for any $\xi \in \mathcal{A}$.
Corollary 2.4.3 Let $\mathcal{A} \subset L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ and $\eta \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ such that for any $D \in \mathcal{F}$

$$
E\left(1_{D}|\xi|\right) \leq E\left(1_{D}|\eta|\right) ; \quad \forall \xi \in \mathcal{A} .
$$

Then $\mathcal{A}$ is uniformly integrable.
The following theorem demonstrates the importance of uniform integrability.

Theorem 2.4.4 Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$be a sequence of integrable random variables on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Then $X_{n} \rightarrow X$ in $L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ for some random variable $X$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$
\int_{\Omega}\left|X_{n}-X\right| d P \rightarrow 0 \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty
$$

if and only if $\left\{X_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$is uniformly integrable and $X_{n} \rightarrow X$ in probability as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

Proof. Necessity: It is standard that convergence in $L^{1}$ implies convergence in probability. We show the uniform integrability. For any $\varepsilon>0$ there is a natural number $m$ such that

$$
\int_{\Omega}\left|X_{n}-X\right| \mathrm{d} P \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad \text { for all } n>m .
$$

Therefore for every measurable subset $A$

$$
\int_{A}\left|X_{n}\right| \mathrm{d} P \leq \int_{A}|X| \mathrm{d} P+\int_{\Omega}\left|X_{n}-X\right| \mathrm{d} P
$$

so that

$$
\sup _{n} \int_{A}\left|X_{n}\right| \mathrm{d} P \leq \int_{A}|X| \mathrm{d} P+\sup _{k \leq m} \int_{A}\left|X_{k}\right| \mathrm{d} P+\frac{\varepsilon}{2} .
$$

In particular

$$
\sup _{n} E\left|X_{n}\right| \leq E|X|+\sup _{k \leq m} E\left|X_{k}\right|+\frac{\varepsilon}{2}
$$

i.e. $\left\{X_{n}: n \geq 1\right\}$ is bounded in $L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Moreover, since $X, X_{1}, \cdots, X_{m}$ belong to $L^{1}$, so that there is $\delta>0$ such that, if $P(A) \leq \delta$, then

$$
\int_{A}|X| \mathrm{d} P+\sum_{k=1}^{m} \int_{A}\left|X_{k}\right| \mathrm{d} P \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}
$$

and therefore

$$
\sup _{n} \int_{A}\left|X_{n}\right| \mathrm{d} P \leq \varepsilon
$$

as long as $P(A) \leq \delta$.
Sufficiency. By Fatou's lemma

$$
\int_{\Omega}|X| \mathrm{d} P \leq \sup _{n} \int_{\Omega}\left|X_{n}\right| \mathrm{d} P<+\infty
$$

so that $X \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Therefore $\left\{X_{n}-X: n \geq 1\right\}$ is uniformly integrable, thus, by Theorem 2.4.2, for any $\varepsilon>0$ there is $\delta>0$ such that

$$
\int_{A}\left|X_{n}-X\right| \mathrm{d} P<\varepsilon
$$

for any $A \in \mathcal{F}$ such that $P(A) \leq \delta$. Since $X_{n} \rightarrow X$ in probability, there is an $N>0$ such that

$$
P\left(\left|X_{n}-X\right| \geq \varepsilon\right) \leq \delta \quad \forall n \geq N .
$$

Therefore for $n \geq N$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\Omega}\left|X_{n}-X\right| \mathrm{d} P & \leq \int_{\left\{\left|X_{n}-X\right| \geq \varepsilon\right\}}\left|X_{n}-X\right| \mathrm{d} P+\varepsilon P\left(X_{n}-X \mid<\varepsilon\right) \\
& \leq \varepsilon+\varepsilon P\left(X_{n}-X \mid<\varepsilon\right) \\
& \leq 2 \varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left|X_{n}-X\right|=0
$$

## Chapter 3

## Elements of martingale theory

In this chapter we collect together the fundamental results about martingales that we will need, including Doob's martingale inequalities and the convergence theorem for martingales.

### 3.1 Martingales in discrete-time

In probability theory we study properties of random variables determined by their distributions. Let $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ be a probability space, and $\mathbb{Z}_{+}$denote the set of non-negative integers. An increasing family $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}}$of sub $\sigma$ algebras of $\mathcal{F}$ is called a filtration. A probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ together with a filtration $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}}$is called a filtered probability space, denoted by $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{n}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$. Given a sequence $X \equiv\left\{X_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$of random variables on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, the filtration generated by the sequence $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is defined to be $\mathcal{F}_{n}^{X}=\sigma\left\{X_{m}: m \leq n\right\}$ which is the smallest $\sigma$-algebra with respect to which $X_{0}, \cdots, X_{n}$ are measurable. If $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ represents the discrete time evolution of a random process, then informally $\mathcal{F}_{n}^{X}$ is the information obtained by observing this process up to time $n$.

Definition 3.1.1 A sequence $\left\{X_{n}: n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}\right\}$of random variables on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is adapted to $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}$ if for every $n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}, X_{n}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{n}$-measurable. In this case we say $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is an adapted sequence, or an adapted process with respect to $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}$.

If $X_{n}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{n-1}$-measurable for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $X_{0} \in \mathcal{F}_{0}$, then we say $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is predictable.

Definition 3.1.2 Let $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}: n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}\right\}$be a filtration on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Then a measurable function $T: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{+} \cup\{+\infty\}$ is called a stopping time (or a random time) with respect to the filtration $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}$ if $\{\omega$ : $T(\omega)=n\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n}$ for every $n$.

Remark 3.1.3 1) By definition, if $T$ is a stopping time, then $\{\omega: T(\omega)=$ $+\infty\} \in \mathcal{F}$.
2) By writing

$$
\{\omega: T(\omega) \leq n\}=\cup_{k=0}^{n}\{\omega: T(\omega)=k\},
$$

we see that a random variable $T: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{+} \cup\{+\infty\}$ is a stopping time if and only if $\{\omega: T(\omega) \leq n\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n}$ for every $n$.

Of course, a constant time $T=n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ or $+\infty$ is a stopping time.

Example 3.1.4 A basic example of stopping time is the following. Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be an $\mathbb{R}^{d}$-valued, adapted process on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{n}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$, and let $B$ be a Borel subset of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. Then the first time $T$ that the process $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ hits B:

$$
T(\omega)=\inf \left\{n \geq 0: X_{n}(\omega) \in B\right\}
$$

(with the convention that $\inf \Phi=+\infty$ ) is a stopping time with respect to the filtration $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\} . T$ is called the hitting time of $B$.

To see this observe that

$$
\{T=n\}=\cap_{k=0}^{n-1}\left\{X_{k} \in B^{c}\right\} \cap\left\{X_{n} \in B\right\} .
$$

Thus, since $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is adapted, and therefore $\left\{X_{k} \in B^{c}\right\} \in \mathcal{F}_{k}$ and $\left\{X_{n} \in\right.$ $B\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n}$, we have $\{T=n\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n}$ and therefore $T$ is a stopping time.

Given a stopping time $T$ on the filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{n}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$, we define the $\sigma$-algebra that represents the information available up to the random time $T$ by

$$
\mathcal{F}_{T}=\left\{A \in \mathcal{F}: \text { such that } A \cap\{T \leq n\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n} \text { for any } n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}\right\} .
$$

It is obvious that $\mathcal{F}_{T}=\mathcal{F}_{n}$ if $T=n$ is a constant time $n$.
Theorem 3.1.5 Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be an adapted process on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{n}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$, let $\xi$ be a random variable, and set $X_{\infty}=\xi$. Let $T$ be a stopping time with respect to $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}$, and define $X_{T}(\omega)=X_{T(\omega)}(\omega)$ for any $\omega \in \Omega$. Then $X_{T}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{T^{-}}$ measurable. In particular, $X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{T}$-measurable.

Proof. For any $r \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$
\left\{X_{T} \leq r\right\} \cap\{T \leq n\}=\cup_{k=0}^{n}\left\{X_{k} \leq r\right\} \cap\{T=k\}
$$

which belongs to $\mathcal{F}_{n}$ as $\left\{X_{k} \leq r\right\} \cap\{T=k\} \in \mathcal{F}_{k}, k=0,1, \cdots, n$, so that $X_{T}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{T}$-measurable.

The term martingale has a number of meanings but, in the sense it is used in modern probability theory, it probably began with its use as a term for a gambling strategy in 18th century France. This was the doubling strategy in that a gambler bets a unit stake on the first game and then doubles their stake after each loss in order to end up winning a unit at the time they have their first win. It has now come to mean a canonical model for a fair game, in that the expectation of a player, whose fortune is the value of the martingale, has constant mean.

Definition 3.1.6 Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be an adapted process on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{n}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$. Suppose $X_{n} \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}$

1. $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is a martingale, if $E\left(X_{n+1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right)=X_{n}$ for all $n$.
2. $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is a supermartingale (resp. a submartingale), if $E\left(X_{n+1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right) \leq$ $X_{n}$ (resp. $E\left(X_{n+1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right) \geq X_{n}$ ) for all $n$.

Example 3.1.7 (Martingale transform) Let $\left\{H_{n}\right\}$ be a predictable process and $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a martingale, and let

$$
(H \cdot X)_{n}:=\sum_{k=1}^{n} H_{k}\left(X_{k}-X_{k-1}\right),(H \cdot X)_{0}=0 .
$$

Then $\left\{(H . X)_{n}\right\}$ is a martingale.
We recall Jensen's inequality for conditional expectation: if $\varphi: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a convex function, $\xi, \varphi(\xi) \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, and $\mathcal{G}$ is a $\operatorname{sub} \sigma$-field of $\mathcal{F}$, then

$$
\varphi(E(\xi \mid \mathcal{G})) \leq E(\varphi(\xi) \mid \mathcal{G})
$$

For example $\varphi(t)=(t \ln t) 1_{(1, \infty)}(t), t 1_{(0, \infty)}$ and $|t|^{p}($ for $p \geq 1)$ are all convex functions.

Theorem 3.1.8 1) Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a martingale, and let $\varphi: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a convex function. If $\varphi\left(X_{n}\right)$ is integrable for any $n$, then $\left\{\varphi\left(X_{n}\right)\right\}$ is a submartingale.
2) Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a submartingale, and let $\varphi: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be an increasing convex function. If $\varphi\left(X_{n}\right)$ is integrable for any $n$, then $\left\{\varphi\left(X_{n}\right)\right\}$ is a submartingale.

Proof. For example, let us prove the first claim. Indeed

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varphi\left(X_{n}\right) & =\varphi\left(E\left(X_{n+1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right)\right) \quad \text { (martingale property) } \\
& \leq E\left(\varphi\left(X_{n+1}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right) \quad \text { (Jensen's inequality). }
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 3.1.9 If $X=\left(X_{n}\right)$ is a sub-martingale, so is $\left(X_{n}^{+}\right)$. If, in addition, each $X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}$ is integrable, then $\left(X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}\right)$ is a sub-martingale, where $\log ^{+} x=1_{\{x \geq 1\}} \log x$.

### 3.2 Doob's inequalities

An important result about martingales is Doob's optional sampling theorem, which says that the (super-, sub-) martingale property holds at random times.

Theorem 3.2.1 (Doob's optional sampling Theorem) Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a martingale (resp. super-martingale), and let $S, T$ be two bounded stopping times. Suppose $S \leq T$. Then $E\left(X_{T} \mid \mathcal{F}_{S}\right)=X_{S}$ (resp. $\left.E\left(X_{T} \mid \mathcal{F}_{S}\right) \leq X_{S}\right)$.

Proof. We prove this theorem for the case that $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is a supermartingale. Let $T \leq n$ (as it is bounded by our assumption). Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|X_{T}\right| & =\sum_{j=0}^{n} E\left(\left|X_{T}\right|: T=j\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=0}^{n} E\left(\left|X_{j}\right|: T=j\right) \\
& \leq \sum_{j=0}^{n} E\left|X_{j}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies that $X_{T}$ is integrable. Similarly $X_{S} \in L^{1}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{S}, P\right)$.
Let $A \in \mathcal{F}_{S}, j \geq 0$. Then $A \cap\{S=j\} \in \mathcal{F}_{j}$ and $\{T>j\} \in \mathcal{F}_{j}$ as $S$ and $T$ are stopping times. We consider several cases.

1. If $0 \leq T-S \leq 1$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{A}\left(X_{S}-X_{T}\right) \mathrm{d} P & =\sum_{j=0}^{n} \int_{A \cap\{S=j\} \cap\{T>j\}}\left(X_{j}-X_{j+1}\right) \mathrm{d} P \\
& \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

as each term in the above sum is non-negative.
2. General case. Set $R_{j}=T \wedge(S+j), j=1, \cdots, n$. Then each $R_{j}$ is a stopping time,

$$
S \leq R_{1} \leq \cdots \leq R_{n}=T
$$

and

$$
R_{1}-S \leq 1, \quad R_{j+1}-R_{j} \leq 1, \quad \text { for } 1 \leq j \leq n-1
$$

Let $A \in \mathcal{F}_{S}$. Then $A \in \mathcal{F}_{R_{j}}$ (as $S \leq R_{j}$ ). Therefore, applying the first case to $R_{j}$, we have

$$
\int_{A} X_{S} \mathrm{~d} P \geq \int_{A} X_{R_{1}} \mathrm{~d} P \geq \cdots \geq \int_{A} X_{T} \mathrm{~d} P
$$

so that

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{S}\right) \geq E\left(1_{A} X_{T}\right) \quad \text { for any } A \in \mathcal{F}_{S} .
$$

Since $X_{S} \in \mathcal{F}_{S}$ we conclude that

$$
X_{S} \geq E\left(X_{T} \mid \mathcal{F}_{S}\right)
$$

Thus we have proved the theorem.
Corollary 3.2.2 1) For a martingale $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ we have, if $T$ is a bounded stopping time then

$$
E X_{T}=E X_{0}
$$

2) Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a submartingale, and let $T$ be a stopping time. Then

$$
E\left|X_{T \wedge k}\right| \leq E\left(X_{0}\right)+2 E\left(X_{k}^{-}\right) \quad \text { for any } k=0,1,2, \cdots
$$

and therefore

$$
E\left(\left|X_{T}\right| 1_{\{T<\infty\}}\right) \leq 3 \sup _{n} E\left|X_{n}\right| .
$$

Proof. 1) Let $S=0$ and take expectations in the optional sampling Theorem.
2) As we know that $\left\{X_{n}^{-}\right\}$is a supermartingale, by the previous theorem we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|X_{T \wedge k}\right| & =E X_{T \wedge k}+2 E\left(X_{T \wedge k}^{-}\right) \\
& \leq E X_{0}+2 E\left(X_{k}^{-}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This is the first inequality. While

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(\left|X_{T \wedge k}\right| 1_{\{T<\infty\}}\right) & \leq E X_{0}+2 E\left(X_{k}^{-}\right) \\
& \leq 3 \sup _{n} E\left(\left|X_{n}\right|\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and the second inequality thus follows from Fatou's lemma.

Theorem 3.2.3 (Doob's maximal inequality). Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a super-martingale. Then for any $\lambda>0, n \geq 0$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\} & \leq E X_{0}-\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\}} X_{n} d P \\
& =E X_{0}-E\left\{X_{n}: \sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\} \\
\lambda P\left\{\inf _{k \leq n} X_{k} \leq-\lambda\right\} & \leq \int_{\left\{\inf _{k \leq n} X_{k} \leq-\lambda\right\}}-X_{n} d P \\
& =-E\left\{X_{n}: \inf _{k \leq n} X_{k} \leq-\lambda\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n}\left|X_{k}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq E X_{0}+2 E\left(X_{n}^{-}\right)
$$

Proof. Let us prove the first inequality. Let $R=\inf \left\{k \geq 0: X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}$ and $T=R \wedge n$. Then $T$ is a bounded stopping time. By definition,

$$
X_{R} \geq \lambda, \quad \text { on } \quad\{R<\infty\}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\} \subseteq\left\{X_{T} \geq \lambda\right\} \\
& \left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\} \subseteq\{T=n\}
\end{aligned}
$$

By Doob's optional sampling theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E X_{0} & \geq E X_{T} \\
& =\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}} X_{T} \mathrm{~d} P+\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\}} X_{T} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& \geq \lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}+\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\}} X_{n} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& =\lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}+E\left\{X_{n} ; \sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}<\lambda\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

In order to prove the second inequality, we set $Y_{k}=-X_{k}$. Then $\left\{Y_{n}\right\}$ is a submartingale. Define

$$
R=\inf \left\{k \geq 0: Y_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}, \quad T=R \wedge n .
$$

Then $T$ is a stopping time and $T \leq n$. Again we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k} \geq \lambda\right\} \subseteq\left\{Y_{T} \geq \lambda\right\} \\
& \left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k}<\lambda\right\} \subseteq\{T=n\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore by applying Doob's optional sampling theorem to $Y$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E Y_{n} & \geq E Y_{T} \\
& =\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}} Y_{T} \mathrm{~d} P+\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k}<\lambda\right\}} Y_{T} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& \geq \lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}+\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k}<\lambda\right\}} Y_{n} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& =\lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n}-X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}+\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k}<\lambda\right\}} Y_{n} \mathrm{~d} P .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n}-X_{k} \geq \lambda\right\} & =\lambda P\left\{\inf _{k \leq n} X_{k} \leq-\lambda\right\} \\
& \leq E Y_{n}-\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k}<\lambda\right\}} Y_{n} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& =\int_{\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} Y_{k} \geq \lambda\right\}} Y_{n} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& =-\int_{\left\{\inf _{k \leq n} X_{k} \leq-\lambda\right\}} X_{n} \mathrm{~d} P .
\end{aligned}
$$

The third inequality follows from the first two inequalities.
As a consequence we have
Theorem 3.2.4 (Kolmogorov's inequality) Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a martingale and $X_{n} \in L^{2}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. Then for any $\lambda>0$,

$$
P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n}\left|X_{k}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda^{2}} E\left(X_{n}^{2}\right)
$$

Proof. By Jensen's inequality, for any $k \leq n$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(X_{k}^{2}\right) & =E\left(E\left(X_{n} \mid \mathcal{F}_{k}\right)\right)^{2} \\
& \leq E\left(X_{n}^{2}\right)<\infty .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $\left(-X_{k}^{2}\right)(k=0,1, \cdots, n)$ is a supermartingale. By the second inequality in Theorem 3.2.3, we have

$$
\lambda^{2} P\left\{\inf _{k \leq n}-X_{k}^{2} \leq-\lambda^{2}\right\} \leq \int_{\left\{\inf _{k \leq n}-X_{k}^{2} \leq-\lambda^{2}\right\}} X_{n}^{2} \mathrm{~d} P
$$

and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda^{2} P\left\{\sup _{k \leq n} X_{k}^{2} \geq \lambda^{2}\right\} & \leq \int_{\left\{\inf _{k \leq n}-X_{k}^{2} \leq-\lambda^{2}\right\}} X_{n}^{2} \mathrm{~d} P \\
& \leq \int_{\Omega} X_{n}^{2} \mathrm{~d} P=E\left(X_{n}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Next we establish Doob's $L^{p}$-inequality. Let $X_{n}^{*}=\max _{k \leq n} X_{k}$. If $\Phi: \mathbb{R}_{+} \rightarrow[0, \infty)$ is a continuous and increasing function such that $\Phi(0)=0$, then

$$
E \Phi\left(X_{n}^{*}\right)=E \int_{0}^{X_{n}^{*}} \mathrm{~d} \Phi(\lambda)=\int_{\Omega \times\left[0, X_{n}^{*}\right]} \mathrm{d} \Phi(\lambda) \mathrm{d} P .
$$

Theorem 3.2.5 (Doob's $L^{p}$-inequality) 1) If $\left(X_{n}\right)$ is a sub-martingale, then for any $p>1$

$$
E\left(\max _{k \leq n} X_{k}^{+}\right)^{p} \leq\left(\frac{p}{p-1}\right)^{p} E\left|X_{n}^{+}\right|^{p} .
$$

2) If $\left(X_{n}\right)$ is a martingale, then for any $p>1$,

$$
E\left(\max _{k \leq n}\left|X_{k}\right|^{p}\right) \leq\left(\frac{p}{p-1}\right)^{p} E\left|X_{n}\right|^{p} .
$$

Proof. If $\left(X_{n}\right)$ is a martingale, then $\left(\left|X_{n}\right|\right)$ is a submartingale, so 2) follows from 1). Let us prove the first conclusion. Replacing $\left(X_{n}\right)$ by $\left(X_{n}^{+}\right)$, we may, without lose of the generality, assume that $\left(X_{n}\right)$ is a non-negative sub-martingale. By Fubini's theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
E \Phi\left(X_{n}^{*}\right) & =E\left\{\int_{0}^{X_{n}^{*}} \mathrm{~d} \Phi(\lambda)\right\} \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty} P\left(X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right) \mathrm{d} \Phi(\lambda) \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda} E\left(X_{n} ; X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right) \mathrm{d} \Phi(\lambda)
\end{aligned}
$$

together with Doob's maximal inequality

$$
P\left(X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right) \leq \frac{1}{\lambda} E\left\{X_{n}: X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right\}
$$

we thus obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
E \Phi\left(X_{n}^{*}\right) & \leq \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda} E\left\{X_{n}: X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right\} \mathrm{d} \Phi(\lambda) \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda} \int_{\left\{X_{n}^{*} \geq \lambda\right\}} X_{n} \mathrm{~d} P \mathrm{~d} \Phi(\lambda) \\
& =E\left\{X_{n}\left(\int_{0}^{X_{n}^{*}} \frac{1}{\lambda} \mathrm{~d} \Phi(\lambda)\right)\right\} \tag{3.1}
\end{align*}
$$

Choose $\Phi(\lambda)=\lambda^{p}$, then $\Phi^{\prime}(\lambda)=p \lambda^{p-1}$, and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|X_{n}^{*}\right|^{p} & \leq E\left\{X_{n}\left(\int_{0}^{X_{n}^{*}} \frac{1}{\lambda} p \lambda^{p-1} \mathrm{~d} \lambda\right)\right\} \\
& =E\left\{\frac{p}{p-1} X_{n}\left(X_{n}^{*}\right)^{p-1}\right\} \\
& =\frac{p}{p-1} E\left(X_{n}\left(X_{n}^{*}\right)^{p-1}\right) \\
& \leq \frac{p}{p-1}\left(\left|E X_{n}\right|^{p}\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\left(E\left|X_{n}^{*}\right|^{p}\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}
\end{aligned}
$$

the last equality follows from Hölder's inequality.

Exercise 3.2.6 Prove $\log x \leq x /$ e for all $x>0$, hence prove that

$$
a \log ^{+} b \leq a \log ^{+} a+\frac{b}{e}
$$

Theorem 3.2.7 (Doob's inequality) Let $\left(X_{n}\right)$ be a non-negative sub-martingale.
Then

$$
E\left\{\max _{k \leq n} X_{k}\right\} \leq \frac{e}{e-1}\left\{1+\max _{k \leq n} E\left(X_{k} \log ^{+} X_{k}\right)\right\}
$$

Proof. We may use the same argument as in the proof of the previous theorem, but with the choice that $\Phi(\lambda)=(\lambda-1)^{+}$. We thus obtain (by

$$
\begin{align*}
E\left\{\Phi\left(X_{n}^{*}\right)\right\} & \leq E\left\{X_{n}\left(\int_{0}^{X_{n}^{*}} \frac{1}{\lambda} \mathrm{~d} \Phi(\lambda)\right)\right\}  \tag{3.1}\\
& =E\left\{X_{n}\left(1_{\left\{X_{n}^{*} \geq 1\right\}} \int_{1}^{X_{n}^{*}} \frac{1}{\lambda} \mathrm{~d} \lambda\right)\right\} \\
& =E\left(X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}^{*}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

which implies that

$$
E\left(X_{n}^{*}-1\right) \leq E\left(X_{n}^{*}-1\right)^{+} \leq E\left\{X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}^{*}\right\} .
$$

Together with the inequality (see the previous exercise)

$$
X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}^{*} \leq X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}+\frac{1}{e} X_{n}^{*}
$$

it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(X_{n}^{*}-1\right) & \leq E\left\{X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}^{*}\right\} \\
& \leq E\left\{X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}\right\}+\frac{1}{e} E X_{n}^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
E X_{n}^{*} \leq \frac{1}{1-1 / e} E\left\{X_{n} \log ^{+} X_{n}\right\}
$$

### 3.3 The convergence theorem

Let $\left\{X_{n}: n \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}\right\}$be an adapted sequence of random variables, and $[a, b]$ be a closed interval. Define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T_{0}=\inf \left\{n \geq 0: X_{n} \leq a\right\} \\
& T_{1}=\inf \left\{n>T_{0}: X_{n} \geq b\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

and for $j \geq 1$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_{2 j} & =\inf \left\{n>T_{2 j-1}: X_{n} \leq a\right\} ; \\
T_{2 j+1} & =\inf \left\{n>T_{2 j}: X_{n} \geq b\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $\left\{T_{k}\right\}$ is an increasing sequence of stopping times. If $T_{2 j-1}(\omega)<\infty$, then the sequence

$$
X_{0}(\omega), \cdots, X_{T_{2 j-1}}(\omega)
$$

upcrosses the interval $[a, b] j$ times. Denote by $U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)$ the number of upcrossing $[a, b]$ by $\left\{X_{k}\right\}$ up to time $n$. Then

$$
\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=j\right\}=\left\{T_{2 j-1} \leq n<T_{2 j+1}\right\} \in \mathcal{F}_{n}
$$

By definition

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{T_{2 j}} & \leq a, \text { on }\left\{T_{2 j}<\infty\right\} \\
X_{T_{2 j+1}} & \geq b, \text { on }\left\{T_{2 j+1}<\infty\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 3.3.1 (Doob's upcrossing theorem) 1) If $X=\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is a supermartingale, then for any $n \geq 1, k \geq 0$, we have

$$
P\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \geq k\right\} \leq \frac{1}{b-a} E\left\{\left(X_{n}-a\right)^{-}: U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=k\right\}
$$

and

$$
E U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \leq \frac{1}{b-a} E\left(X_{n}-a\right)^{-}
$$

2. Similarly, if $X=\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is a submartingale, then

$$
P\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \geq k\right\} \leq \frac{1}{b-a} E\left\{\left(X_{n}-a\right)^{+}: U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=k\right\}
$$

and

$$
E U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \leq \frac{1}{b-a} E\left(X_{n}-a\right)^{+}
$$

Proof. We first prove the inequalities for a supermartingale. Since $X$ is a supermartingale, by Doob's optional sampling theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \geq & E\left(X_{T_{2 k+1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) \\
= & E\left(X_{T_{2 k+1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k} \leq n<T_{2 k+1}\right\}} \\
& +E\left(X_{T_{2 k+1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k+1} \leq n\right\}} \\
\geq & E\left(X_{n}-a\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k} \leq n<T_{2 k+1}\right\}} \quad\left(\text { as } X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}=X_{T_{2 k}} \leq a\right) \\
& +E(b-a) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k+1} \leq n\right\}} \quad\left(\text { as } X_{T_{2 k}+1 \wedge n}=X_{T_{2 k+1}} \geq b\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

However

$$
\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \geq k\right\} \subset\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n\right\}
$$

$$
\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=k\right\}=\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n<T_{2 k}\right\}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \geq & E\left(X_{n}-a\right) 1_{\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=k\right\}} \\
& +E(b-a) 1_{\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \geq k\right\}} \\
= & E\left(X_{n}-a\right) 1_{\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)=k\right\}}+(b-a) P\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X ; n) \geq k\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields the first inequality. By adding up over all $k \geq 0$ we get the second inequality.

Now we prove the inequalities for a submartingale $X$. The argument is very similar. Again by Doob's optional sampling theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \geq & E\left(X_{T_{2 k-1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) \\
= & E\left(X_{T_{2 k-1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n<T_{2 k}\right\}} \\
& +E\left(X_{T_{2 k-1} \wedge n}-X_{T_{2 k} \wedge n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k} \leq n\right\}} \\
\geq & E\left(b-X_{n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n<T_{2 k}\right\}}+E(b-a) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k} \leq n\right\}} \\
= & E\left(a-X_{n}\right) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n<T_{2 k}\right\}}+E(b-a) 1_{\left\{T_{2 k-1} \leq n\right\}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields the desired inequality.
Theorem 3.3.2 (The martingale convergence theorem). Let $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ be a supermartingale. If $\sup _{n} E\left|X_{n}\right|<\infty$, then

$$
X_{n} \rightarrow X_{\infty} \text { exists almost surely. }
$$

Moreover if, in addition, $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is non-negative, then

$$
E\left(X_{\infty} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right) \leq X_{n} \text { for any } n .
$$

Proof. For any rational numbers $a, b \in \mathbb{Q}, a<b$ we set

$$
U_{a}^{b}(X)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} U_{a}^{b}(X ; n)
$$

Then by the Fatou lemma

$$
\begin{aligned}
E U_{a}^{b}(X) & \leq \frac{1}{b-a} \sup _{n} E\left(X_{n}-a\right)^{-} \\
& \leq \frac{|a|}{b-a}+\frac{1}{b-a} \sup _{n} E\left|X_{n}\right|<\infty .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
U_{a}^{b}(X)<\infty, \quad \text { almost surely. }
$$

Let

$$
W_{(a, b)}=\left\{\liminf _{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{n}<a, \limsup _{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{n}>b\right\}
$$

and

$$
W=\cup_{(a, b)} W_{(a, b)}
$$

the countable union over all rational pairs $(a, b), a<b$. Clearly

$$
W_{(a, b)} \subset\left\{U_{a}^{b}(X)=\infty\right\}
$$

so that

$$
P\left(W_{(a, b)}\right)=0 .
$$

Hence $P(W)=0$. However if $\omega \notin W$, then $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{n}(\omega)$ exists, and we denote it by $X_{\infty}(\omega)$ and on $W$ we let $X_{\infty}(\omega)=0$. Then we have $X_{n} \rightarrow X_{\infty}$ almost surely. Moreover by Fatou's lemma,

$$
E\left|X_{\infty}\right| \leq \sup _{n} E\left|X_{n}\right|<\infty,
$$

i.e. $X_{\infty} \in L^{1}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$.

If in addition $\left\{X_{n}\right\}$ is non-negative, then

$$
E\left(X_{m} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right)=X_{n}, \text { for any } m \geq n,
$$

by letting $m \rightarrow \infty$, Fatou's lemma then yields that

$$
E\left(X_{\infty} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n}\right) \leq X_{n} .
$$

### 3.4 Martingales in continuous-time

Martingales (as well as super- and submartingales) and Doob's fundamental inequalities in discrete-time can be extended to martingales in continuous time.

In this section, we present the regularity theory for martingales, which does not appear in the discrete-time case.

Let $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$ be a probability space with a filtration $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ which is an increasing family of $\sigma$-algebras $\mathcal{G}_{t} \subset \mathcal{G}$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}_{+}$. A $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-adapted (real valued) process $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is called a martingale (resp. supermartingale; resp. submartingale), if for any $t \geq s$, almost surely $E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{s}\right)=X_{s}$ (resp. $E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{s}\right) \leq X_{s} ;$ resp. $\left.E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{s}\right) \geq X_{s}\right)$. Similarly, the concept of stopping time can be stated in this setting as well, namely, a function $T: \Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$
is a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping time if for every $t \geq 0$, the event $\{T \leq t\}$ belongs to $\mathcal{G}_{t}$. A new kind of stopping time called a predictable time, which has no counterpart in the discrete-time setting, will play a role if the underlying stochastic process has jumps. A stopping time $T: \Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$ is predictable if there is an increasing sequence $\left\{T_{n}\right\}$ of $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping times such that for each $n$, $T_{n}<T$ and $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} T_{n}=T$.

Let

$$
\mathcal{G}_{T}=\left\{A \in \mathcal{G}: \text { for any } t \geq 0,(T \leq t) \cap A \in \mathcal{G}_{t}\right\}
$$

be the $\sigma$-algebra representing the information available up to the random time $T$, and let

$$
\mathcal{G}_{T-}=\left\{A \in \mathcal{G}: \text { for any } t \geq 0,(T<t) \cap A \in \mathcal{G}_{t}\right\}
$$

which represents the information available strictly before time $T$.
The following lemma can be used to generalize many results about martingales in discrete-time to the continuous-time setting.

Lemma 3.4.1 Let $T: \Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$ be a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping time. For every $n$ let

$$
T^{(n)}=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k}{2^{n}} 1_{\left\{\frac{k-1}{2^{n}} \leq T<\frac{k}{2^{n}}\right\}}+(+\infty) 1_{\{T=+\infty\}}
$$

Then $T^{(n)} \geq T$ are $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping times and $T^{(n)} \downarrow T$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
Proof. For any $n$ and $t \geq 0$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\{T^{(n)} \leq t\right\} & =\bigcup_{k=1}^{\infty}\left\{T^{(n)} \leq t\right\} \cap\left\{\frac{k-1}{2^{n}} \leq T<\frac{k}{2^{n}}\right\} \\
& =\bigcup_{k / 2^{n} \leq t}\left\{T^{(n)} \leq t\right\} \cap\left\{\frac{k-1}{2^{n}} \leq T<\frac{k}{2^{n}}\right\} \\
& \in \bigvee_{k / 2^{n} \leq t} \mathcal{G}_{\frac{k}{2^{n}}} \subset \mathcal{G}_{t}
\end{aligned}
$$

For each $t \geq 0$ let $\mathcal{G}_{t+}=\cap_{s>t} \mathcal{G}_{s}$. Then $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)$ is again a filtration on the measurable space $(\Omega, \mathcal{G})$ and obviously $\mathcal{G}_{t+} \supseteq \mathcal{G}_{t}$ for every $t$. If $T: \Omega \rightarrow$ $[0,+\infty]$ is a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)$-stopping time then

$$
\mathcal{G}_{T+}=\left\{A \in \mathcal{G}: \text { for any } t \geq 0,(T \leq t) \cap A \in \mathcal{G}_{t+}\right\}
$$

A filtration $\left(G_{t}\right)$ is said to be right-continuous if $\mathcal{G}_{t+}=\mathcal{G}_{t}$ for each $t \geq 0$. Hence, by definition, $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)$ is right-continuous. Similarly, for $t>0$ we define $\mathcal{G}_{t-}=\sigma\left\{\mathcal{G}_{s}: s<t\right\}$.

Theorem 3.4.2 If $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale (resp. supermartingale, resp. submartingale) on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \overline{\mathcal{G}}_{t}, P\right)$ with right-continuous sample paths almost surely, then $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale (resp. supermartingale, resp. submartingale) on ( $\left.\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t+}, P\right)$.

Proof. Let us prove the supermartingale case. Since $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is integrable and adapted to $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ we just need to prove

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{s+}\right) \leq X_{s} \quad P \text {-a.s. } \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

for every $t>s$. For any $u$ between $s$ and $t$

$$
E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{u}\right) \leq X_{u} \quad P \text {-a.s. }
$$

so that for any $A \in \mathcal{G}_{s+} \subset \mathcal{G}_{u}$

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{t}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{u}\right) .
$$

Letting $u \downarrow s$, as $\lim _{u \downarrow s} X_{u}=X_{s}$, we thus obtain

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{t}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{s}\right)
$$

for any $A \in \mathcal{G}_{s+}$, which is equivalent to (3.2).
Corollary 3.4.3 (Doob's optional sampling theorem) Let $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a supermartingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$ with right-continuous sample paths almost surely, and let $T$ be a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping time. Then

$$
E\left(X_{s+T} 1_{\{T<+\infty\}} \mid \mathcal{G}_{T+}\right) \leq X_{T} 1_{\{T<+\infty\}} \quad \text { P-a.s. }
$$

for any $s \geq 0$.
Proof. The only thing needed here is the fact that $\mathcal{G}_{T+}$ is the $\sigma$-algebra at the random time $T$ with respect to the right-continuous filtration $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. The corollary then follows from Doob's optional sampling in discrete time, Lemma 3.4.1 and the above Theorem 3.4.2.

Similar conclusions hold for martingales and submartingales.
One could ask when a martingale (supermartingale) has right-continuous sample paths almost surely. The question can be answered via Doob's convergence theorem for supermartingales.

Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a real valued stochastic process, and let $a<b$. If

$$
F=\left\{0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{N}\right\}
$$

is a finite subset of $[0,+\infty)$, then we let $U_{a}^{b}(X, F)$ denote the number of upcrossings by $\left\{X_{t_{1}}, \cdots, X_{t_{N}}\right\}$, and if $D \subset[0,+\infty)$, then we let $U_{a}^{b}(X, D)$ denote the superemum of $U_{a}^{b}(X, F)$ when $F$ is a subset of $D$. Obviously $D \rightarrow U_{a}^{b}(X, D)$ is increasing with respect to the inclusion $\subset$. In particular, if $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-adapted process and if $D$ is a countable subset of $[0,+\infty)$ then for every $t \geq 0, U_{a}^{b}(X, D \cap[0, t])$ is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{G}_{t}$. Since we may apply Doob's upcrossing inequality to $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in F}$ where $F$ is a finite subset, we can establish the following result.

Theorem 3.4.4 (Doob's upcrossing inequality). If $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a supermartingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$, then for any $a<b, t>0$ and any countable subset $D$ of $[0, t]$

$$
E U_{a}^{b}(X, D) \leq \frac{1}{b-a} E\left(X_{t}-a\right)^{-}
$$

where $x^{-}=(-x) \vee 0$.
This gives the following version of the supermartingale convergence theorem.

Corollary 3.4.5 Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a supermartingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$, and let $D$ be a countable dense subset of $[0,+\infty)$. Then for almost all $w \in \Omega$, the right limit of $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ along the countable dense set $D$ at $t$

$$
\lim _{s \in D, s>t, s \downarrow t} X_{s} \text { exists. }
$$

Similarly for almost all $w \in \Omega$, for each $t>0$, the left limt of $X_{t}$ along $D$ at time $t$,

$$
\lim _{s \in D, s<t, s \backslash t} X_{s} \text { exists } .
$$

We are now in a position to prove the following fundamental theorem, which in the literature is called Föllmer's lemma.

Theorem 3.4.6 Let $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a supermartingale (resp. martingale) on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$, and let $D$ be a countable dense subset in $[0,+\infty)$.

1. For almost all $w \in \Omega$

$$
Z_{t}(w)=\lim _{s \in D, s>t, s \downarrow t} X_{s}(w)
$$

exists for all $t \geq 0$, and $Z_{t}$ is $\mathcal{G}_{t+}$-measurable,
2. For almost all $w \in \Omega$ and for all $t>0$ the following left limit exists

$$
Z_{t-}(w)=\lim _{s<t, s \uparrow} Z_{s}(w)
$$

and therefore $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t+}\right)$-adapted process with right-continuous sample paths and left limits.
3. For any $t \geq 0$

$$
E\left(Z_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{t}\right) \leq X_{t}, \quad \text { resp. } E\left(Z_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{t}\right)=X_{t} \quad \text { P-a.s. }
$$

4. $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a supermartingale (resp. martingale) on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t+}, P\right)$.

Proof. We only need to prove statements 3 and 4 . Firstly we show the third statement. For any $r>t r \in D$

$$
E\left(X_{r} \mid \mathcal{G}_{t}\right) \leq X_{t}
$$

so that for any $A \in \mathcal{G}_{t}$

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{r}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{t}\right)
$$

Letting $r \downarrow t$ along $D$

$$
E\left(1_{A} Z_{t}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{t}\right) .
$$

which is equivalent to the inequality in 3 . Similarly, if $t>s, u>t>r>s$ and $u, r \in D$ then

$$
E\left(X_{u} \mid \mathcal{G}_{r}\right) \leq X_{r}
$$

In particular, for any $A \in \mathcal{G}_{s+} \subset \mathcal{G}_{r}$

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{u}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{r}\right) .
$$

Letting $u \in D \downarrow t$ and $r \in D \downarrow s$ we obtain that

$$
E\left(1_{A} X_{t}\right) \leq E\left(1_{A} X_{s}\right)
$$

for every $A \in \mathcal{G}_{s+}$, which implies the statement 4 .
However we can not in general conclude that $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a version of $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. The two processes can be very different.

Corollary 3.4.7 We use the same assumptions and notation as in Theorem 3.4.6. Assume that $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is right-continuous. Then $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a version of $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$; that is, for each $t \geq 0, Z_{t}=X_{t}$ almost surely, if and only if $t \rightarrow E\left(X_{t}\right)$ is right-continuous.

Proof. Since $Z_{t} \in \mathcal{G}_{t}=\mathcal{G}_{t+}$ so that, according to 3 of Theorem 3.4.6

$$
Z_{t}=E\left(Z_{t} \mid \mathcal{G}_{t}\right) \leq X_{t} .
$$

While, by the first conclusion in the same theorem,

$$
E\left(Z_{t}\right)=\lim _{s \in D, s>t, s \downarrow t} E\left(X_{s}\right) .
$$

Therefore, in order to have the equality $Z_{t}=X_{t}$, the necessary and sufficient condition is that

$$
E\left(Z_{t}\right)=\lim _{s \in D, s>t, s \downarrow t} E\left(X_{s}\right)=E\left(X_{t}\right) .
$$

However $s \rightarrow E\left(X_{s}\right)$ is decreasing, so the above equality is equivalent to

$$
\lim _{s>t, s \downarrow t} E\left(X_{s}\right)=E\left(X_{t}\right)
$$

i.e. $t \rightarrow E\left(X_{t}\right)$ is right-continuous.

Corollary 3.4.8 We use the same assumptions and notation as in Theorem 3.4.6. If $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is right continuous, and if $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$, then the process $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ defined in 3.4 .6 is a version of $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$.

Proof. This is because for a martingale $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}, t \rightarrow E\left(X_{t}\right)=E\left(X_{0}\right)$ is a constant.

There is a previsible version of the optional sampling theorem. Let $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a right-continuous filtration. We say a $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping time $T$ : $\Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$ is predictable if there is a sequence $\left\{T_{n}\right\}$ of $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)$-stopping times such that $T_{n}<T$ for every $n$ and $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} T_{n}=T$. The filtration $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is quasi-left continuous if for every predictable stopping time $T$ we have $\mathcal{G}_{T-}=\mathcal{G}_{T}$.

Theorem 3.4.9 (Doob's optional sampling theorem - predictable version) Let $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \in[0, \infty]}$ be a supermartingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{G}_{t}, P\right)$ which is right-continuous with left-limits, where $\left(\mathcal{G}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a right-continuous filtration. Then for any predictable stopping time $T$ and $s \geq 0$

$$
E\left(X_{s+T} 1_{\{T<+\infty\}} \mid \mathcal{G}_{T-}\right) \leq X_{T-} 1_{\{T<+\infty\}} \quad \text { a.s. }
$$

### 3.5 Local martingales

Let $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ be a filtered probability space.

### 3.5.1 Stopping times

Recall that a random variable $T: \Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$ (note that the value $+\infty$ is allowed) is called a stopping time (a random time) if for each $t \geq 0$ the event

$$
\{\omega: T(\omega) \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_{t} .
$$

If $T$ is a stopping time, then

$$
\mathcal{F}_{T}=\left\{A \in \mathcal{F}: A \cap\{T \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_{t} \text { for all } t \geq 0\right\}
$$

which represents the information available up to the random time $T$. For technical reasons we will require the following conditions to be satisfied unless otherwise specified.

1. $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is a complete probability space.
2. The filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is right-continuous, that is, for each $t \geq 0$

$$
\mathcal{F}_{t}=\mathcal{F}_{t+} \equiv \cap_{s>t} \mathcal{F}_{s}
$$

3. Each $\mathcal{F}_{t}$ contains all null sets in $\mathcal{F}$.

In this case, we say the filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ satisfies the usual conditions.

Remark 3.5.1 If $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a right-continuous stochastic process on a complete probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, then its natural filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ satisfies the usual conditions.

The following is a result we will not prove in this course.

Theorem 3.5.2 If $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a right-continuous stochastic process adapted to $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ (recall that our filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ satisfies the usual conditions), and if $T: \Omega \rightarrow[0,+\infty]$ is a stopping time, then the random variable $X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}}$ is measurable with respect to the $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{F}_{T}$, where

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}}(\omega) & =X_{T(\omega)}(\omega) 1_{\{\omega: T(\omega)<\infty\}}(\omega) \\
& =\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
X_{T(\omega)}(\omega) ; & \text { if } T(\omega)<+\infty \\
0 ; & \text { if } T(\omega)=+\infty
\end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

Remark 3.5.3 If $X=\left(X_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$and $T: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{+} \cup\{+\infty\}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}} & =\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}} X_{n} 1_{\{T=n\}} \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} X_{n} 1_{\{T=n\}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, if $X$ is adapted to $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$and $T$ is a stopping time, then for any $n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}$,

$$
X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}} 1_{\{T \leq n\}}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} X_{k} 1_{\{T=k\}}
$$

which is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{F}_{n}$, thus by definition $X_{T} 1_{\{T<\infty\}}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{T}$-measurable.

The following theorem provides us with a class of interesting stopping times.

Theorem 3.5.4 Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be an $\mathbb{R}^{d}$-valued, adapted stochastic process that is right-continuous and has left-limits. Then for any Borel subset $D \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$ and $t_{0} \geq 0$

$$
T=\inf \left\{t \geq t_{0}: X_{t} \in D\right\}
$$

is a stopping time, where $\inf \emptyset=+\infty$. $T$ is called the hitting time of $D$ by the process $X$.

Remark 3.5.5 Let us look at the discrete-time case. If $X=\left(X_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$is adapted to $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$taking values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. Then for a Borel subset $D \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$, and $k \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}$

$$
T=\inf \left\{n \geq k: X_{n} \in D\right\}
$$

is a stopping time. Indeed, if $n \leq k-1$ then $\{T=n\}=\emptyset$ and for $n \geq k$ we have

$$
\{T=n\}=\bigcap_{j=k}^{n-1}\left\{X_{j} \in D^{c}\right\} \bigcap\left\{X_{n} \in D\right\}
$$

which belongs to $\mathcal{F}_{n}$.
Example 3.5.6 If $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is an adapted, continuous process on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, \mathbb{P}\right)$ and if $D \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ is a bounded closed subset of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, then

$$
T=\inf \left\{t \geq 0: X_{t} \in D\right\}
$$

is a stopping time. If $X_{0} \in D^{c}$, then

$$
X_{T} 1_{\{T<+\infty\}} \in \partial D
$$

In particular, if $d=1$ and $b$ is a real number, then

$$
T_{b}=\inf \left\{t \geq 0: X_{t}=b\right\}
$$

is a stopping time. In this case $\sup _{t \in[0, N]} X_{t}$ is a random variable,

$$
\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, N]} X_{t}<b\right\}=\left\{T_{b}>N\right\}
$$

and

$$
\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, N]} X_{t} \geq b\right\}=\left\{T_{b} \leq N\right\} .
$$

### 3.5.2 The technique of localization

The concept of a stopping time provides us with a means of "localizing" quantities. Suppose $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a stochastic process, and $T$ is a stopping time, then $X^{T}=\left(X_{t \wedge T}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a stochastic process stopped at (random) time $T$, where

$$
X_{t \wedge T}(\omega)= \begin{cases}X_{t}(\omega) & \text { if } t \leq T(\omega) ; \\ X_{T(\omega)}(\omega) & \text { if } t \geq T(\omega) .\end{cases}
$$

This is often called the stopped process Another interesting stopped process at random time $T$ associated with $X$ is the process $X 1_{[0, T]}$ which is by definition

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(X 1_{[0, T]}\right)_{t}(\omega) & =X_{t} 1_{\{t \leq T\}}(\omega) \\
& =\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
X_{t}(\omega) & \text { if } t \leq T(\omega) ; \\
0 & \text { if } t>T(\omega)
\end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

It is obvious that

$$
X_{t}^{T}=X_{t} 1_{\{t \leq T\}}+X_{T} 1_{\{t>T\}} .
$$

If $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is adapted to the filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, so are the processes $\left(X_{t \wedge T}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ stopped at stopping time $T$ and $X_{t} 1_{\{t \leq T\}}$.

Definition 3.5.7 An adapted stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on the filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ is called $a$ local martingale if there is an increasing family $\left\{T_{n}\right\}$ of finite stopping times such that

$$
T_{n} \uparrow+\infty \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow+\infty
$$

and such that for each $n,\left(X_{t \wedge T_{n}}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale.
Similarly, we may define local super- or sub-martingales.
We conclude with a useful result which shows that suitable control on moments of increments is enough to establish the existence of a continuous version of a stochastic process.

Theorem 3.5.8 (Kolmogorov's continuity theorem) Suppose that a stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$ with values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ on a probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ satisfies

$$
E\left|X_{t}-X_{s}\right|^{\alpha} \leq C|t-s|^{1+\beta}, \quad 0 \leq s, t \leq T,
$$

for some positive constants $\alpha, \beta, C$. Then there exists a continuous modification $\tilde{X}$ of $X$ which is locally Hölder continuous with exponent $\gamma$ for every $\gamma \in(0, \beta / \alpha)$ (that is a.s. there exists a constant $c$ such that $\left|X_{t}-X_{s}\right| \leq$ $c|t-s|^{\gamma}$ for all $\left.0 \leq s, t \leq T\right)$.

Proof. We take the dyadic points $D \cap[0, T]$ and show $X$ is Hölder $\gamma$ on this set. Let

$$
A_{k}=\left\{\left|X_{i 2^{-k}}-X_{(i-1) 2^{-k}}\right|>2^{-\gamma k}, i \in \mathbb{N}, i 2^{-k} \leq T\right\} .
$$

Then a straightforward calculation with Markov's inequality and our assumption on the moments of the increments gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left(A_{k}\right) & \leq \sum_{i=1}^{\left[2^{k} T\right]} P\left(\left|X_{i 2^{-k}}-X_{(i-1) 2^{-k}}\right|>2^{-\gamma k}\right) \\
& \leq 2^{k} T C 2^{-k(1+\beta)} 2^{\gamma \alpha k} \\
& =C T 2^{-k(\beta-\gamma \alpha)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus be definition of $\gamma$ and the Borel-Cantelli lemma we see that almost surely $A_{k}$ only happens finitely often and hence almost surely there exists a random constant $c(\omega)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|X_{i 2^{-k}}-X_{(i-1) 2^{-k}}\right| \leq c(\omega) 2^{-\gamma k}, \quad \forall k \geq 0,1 \leq i \leq T 2^{k} . \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now extend this result by taking any $0 \leq s<t \leq T \in D$, so that there is a maximal $k$ and an $i$ such that $s \leq(i-1) 2^{-k}<i 2^{-k} \leq t$. By taking a sequence of dyadic intervals from $s$ to $(i-1) 2^{-k}$ and from $i 2^{-k}$ to $t$, and using (3.3) we can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|X_{s}-X_{t}\right| & \leq\left|X_{(i-1) 2^{-k}}-X_{s}\right|+\left|X_{t}-X_{i 2^{-k}}\right|+c(\omega) 2^{-\gamma k} \\
& \leq 2 \sum_{j=k+1}^{\infty} c(\omega) 2^{-j \gamma}+c(\omega) 2^{-\gamma k} \\
& =c^{\prime}(\omega) 2^{-\gamma k} \\
& =c^{\prime \prime}(\omega)|t-s|^{\gamma} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we have the Hölder continuity on the dyadics and we can extend this to the whole of $[0, T]$ by density.

## Chapter 4

## Brownian motion

Brownian motion is the canonical mathematical model for random motion in continuous time and space. It is a building block for modelling via stochastic differential equations. It arises naturally in the same way as the central limit theorem in that scaling limits of random walks, provided the jumps have finite variance, will be Brownian motion. We will also see that there is an intimate connection with continuous martingales, in that every continuous martingale can be time changed into Brownian motion.

### 4.1 Construction of Brownian motion

We begin with the definition and then show thatthe existence of Brownian motion.

Definition 4.1.1 $A$ stochastic process $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ taking values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ is called a Brownian motion (BM) in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, if

1. $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ possesses independent increments: for any $0 \leq t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<$ $t_{n}$ the random variables

$$
B_{t_{0}}, \quad B_{t_{1}}-B_{t_{0}}, \cdots, \quad B_{t_{n}}-B_{t_{n-1}}
$$

are independent.
2. For any $t>s \geq 0$, random variable $B_{t}-B_{s}$ has a normal distribution $N(0, t-s)$, that is, $B_{t}-B_{s}$ has pdf (probability density function)

$$
p(t-s, x)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi(t-s))^{d / 2}} e^{-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2(t-s)}} ; \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^{d} .
$$

In other words

$$
P\left\{B_{t}-B_{s} \in d x\right\}=p(t-s, x) d x
$$

3. Almost all sample paths of $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ are continuous.

If, in addition, $P\left\{B_{0}=x\right\}=1$ where $x \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, then we say $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion starting at $x$. If $P\left\{B_{0}=0\right\}=1$ where 0 is the origin of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, then we say that $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard Brownian motion.

Let $p(t, x, y)=p(t, x-y)$, and define for every $t>0$

$$
P_{t} f(x)=\int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(y) p(t, x, y) \mathrm{d} y \quad \forall f \in C_{b}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}\right)
$$

Since

$$
p(t+s, x, y)=\int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} p(t, x, z) p(s, z, y) d z
$$

therefore $\left(P_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a semigroup on $C_{b}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}\right) .\left(P_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is called the heat semigroup in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ : if $f \in C_{b}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$, then $u(t, x)=\left(P_{t} f\right)(x)$ solves the heat equation

$$
\left(\frac{1}{2} \Delta+\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right) u(t, x)=0 ; \quad u(0, \cdot)=f
$$

where $\Delta=\sum_{i} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{i}^{2}}$ is the Laplace operator.
The connection between Brownian motion and the Laplace operator $\Delta$ (and hence harmonic analysis) is demonstrated through the following identity:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x) & =E\left(f\left(B_{t}+x\right)\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{(2 \pi t)^{d / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(y) \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|y-x|^{2}}{2 t}} \mathrm{~d} y
\end{aligned}
$$

where $B_{t}$ is a standard Brownian motion.
Example 4.1.2 If $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left|B_{t}-B_{s}\right|^{p}=c_{p}|t-s|^{p / 2} \quad \text { for all } s, t \geq 0 \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $p \geq 0$, where $c_{p}$ is a constant depending only on $p$. Indeed

$$
E\left|B_{t}-B_{s}\right|^{p}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi|t-s|}} \int_{\mathbb{R}}|x|^{p} \exp \left(-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2|t-s|}\right) d x
$$

Making change of variable

$$
\frac{x}{\sqrt{|t-s|}}=y ; \quad d x=\sqrt{|t-s|} d y
$$

we thus have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|B_{t}-B_{s}\right|^{p} & =\frac{(\sqrt{|t-s|})^{p}}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}}|x|^{p} \exp \left(-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2}\right) d x \\
& =c_{p}|t-s|^{p / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
c_{p}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}}|x|^{p} \exp \left(-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2}\right) d x
$$

(4.1) remains true for $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ with a constant $c_{p}$ depending on $p$ and $d$.

Remark 4.1.3 Since $B_{t}-B_{s} \sim N(0, t-s)$, it is an easy exercise to show that for every $n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}$

$$
E\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)^{2 n}=\frac{(2 n)!}{2^{n} n!}|t-s|^{n}
$$

Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}$. Then $B$ is a centered Gaussian process with co-variance function $C(s, t)=s \wedge t$. Indeed, any finitedimensional distribution of $B$ is Gaussian, so that $B$ is a centered Gaussian process, and its co-variance function (if $s<t$ )

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(B_{t} B_{s}\right) & =E\left(\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) B_{s}+B_{s}^{2}\right) \\
& =E\left(\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) B_{s}\right)+E B_{s}^{2} \\
& =E\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) E B_{s}+E B_{s}^{2} \\
& =s .
\end{aligned}
$$

This gives an alternative definition.
Definition 4.1.4 $A$ Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous Gaussian process with mean 0 and covariance function $\operatorname{cov}\left(B_{t}, B_{s}\right)=\min (t, s)$.

In order to show that these definitions are not vacuous we demonstrate the existence of Brownian motion.

Theorem 4.1.5 (N. Wiener) There is a standard Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$.

Proof. We may assume that $d=1$, the proof in higher dimension is similar. Observe that a $\mathrm{BM}\left(B_{t}\right)$ must be a Gaussian process (i.e. a process whose finite-dimensional distributions are Gaussian distributions) with mean zero and covariance function $E\left(B_{t} B_{s}\right)=s \wedge t$. Therefore we may first construct a Gaussian process $\left(X_{t}\right)$ such that $E X_{t}=0$ and $E\left(X_{t} X_{s}\right)=$ $s \wedge t$ on some completed probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. It can be verified that $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ satisfies all conditions in the definition of BM, except the continuity of its sample paths. The Gaussian process $\left(X_{t}\right)$ may be not continuous, we thus need to modify the construction of $X_{t}$ to make it continuous. Let $D=\left\{\frac{j}{2^{n}}: j \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}, n \in \mathbb{N}\right\}$ be the dyadic real numbers. The key fact we need is that $D$ is dense in $\mathbb{R}^{+}$. Define

$$
H=\bigcup_{N=1}^{\infty} \bigcap_{l=1}^{\infty} \bigcup_{n=l}^{\infty} \bigcup_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}}\left(\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right) .
$$

Let, for fixed $N$,

$$
A_{l}=\bigcup_{n=l}^{\infty} \bigcup_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}}\left(\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right) .
$$

We are going to show that each $\bigcap_{l=1}^{\infty} A_{l}$ has probability zero, and therefore as a sum of countable many events with probability zero, $P(H)=0$. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P\left\{\bigcup_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}}\left(\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right)\right\} \\
\leq & \sum_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}} P\left(\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right) \\
= & N 2^{n} P\left(\left|X_{\frac{1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right) \\
\leq & N 2^{n}\left(2^{n / 8}\right)^{4} E\left|X_{\frac{1}{2^{n}}}\right|^{4} \\
= & \left(2^{n / 8}\right)^{4} N 2^{n} 3\left(\frac{1}{2^{n}}\right)^{2} \\
= & 3 N \frac{1}{2^{n / 2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left(A_{l}\right) & \leq \sum_{n=l}^{\infty} P\left\{\bigcup_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}}\left(\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}\right| \geq \frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right)\right\} \\
& \leq 3 N \sum_{n=l}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{n / 2}} \\
& =\frac{3 N \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}-1} \frac{1}{(\sqrt{2})^{l}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left(\bigcap_{l=1}^{\infty} A_{l}\right) & =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} P\left\{A_{l}\right\} \\
& \leq \frac{3 N \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}-1} \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{(\sqrt{2})^{l}} \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows that $P(H)=0$, thus $P\left(H^{c}\right)=1$. On the other hand, by De Morgan's laws

$$
H^{c}=\bigcap_{N=1}^{\infty} \bigcup_{l=1}^{\infty} \bigcap_{n=l}^{\infty} \bigcap_{j=1}^{N 2^{n}}\left\{\omega:\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}(\omega)-X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}(\omega)\right|<\frac{1}{2^{n / 8}}\right\}
$$

and thus, if $\omega \in H^{c}$, then for any $N$, there is an $l$ such that for any $n>l$ and for all $j=1, \cdots, N 2^{n}$ we have

$$
\left|X_{\frac{j}{2^{n}}}(\omega)_{-} X_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}}}(\omega)\right|<\frac{1}{2^{n / 8}} .
$$

Thus we have that, for any $\omega \in H^{c}$ and $t \geq 0$, the limit of $X_{s}(\omega)$ exists as $s \rightarrow t$ along the dyadic numbers, i.e. as $s \rightarrow t$ and $s \in D$. Moreover, $D$ is dense in $[0, \infty)$, thus for any $t \in[0, \infty)$ we may define

$$
B_{t}(\omega)=\lim _{s \in D \rightarrow t} X_{s}(\omega) \quad \text { if } \omega \in H^{c}
$$

otherwise if $\omega \in H$ we set $B_{t}(\omega)=0$. By definition, $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous process which coincides with $X_{t}$ on $H^{c}$ when $t \in D$. It remains to verify that $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}$ and this is left as an exercise.

There are a number of alternative constructions which can be found in textbooks.

### 4.1.1 Scaling properties

Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. By definition, the distribution of the increments of BM $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is stationary, so that for any fixed time $s, \tilde{B}_{t}=B_{t+s}-B_{s}$ is again a standard Brownian motion. This statement is true indeed for any finite stopping time $S$.

Lemma 4.1.6 (Scaling invariance, self-similarity) For any real number $\lambda \neq$ 0

$$
M_{t}:=\lambda B_{t / \lambda^{2}}
$$

is a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$.
This statement follows directly from the definition of BM. In particular, $\left(-B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is also a standard BM, so that $\left(-B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ have the same distribution.

Lemma 4.1.7 If $U$ is an $d \times d$ orthonormal matrix, then $U B=\left(U B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. That is, BM is invariant under the action of the orthogonal group on $\mathbb{R}^{d}$.

This lemma is an easy corollary of the invariance property of Gaussian distributions under the orthogonal group action.

Lemma 4.1.8 Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$, and define

$$
M_{0}=0, \quad M_{t}=t B_{1 / t} \quad \text { for } t>0 .
$$

Then $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}$.
Proof. Obviously $M_{t}$ possesses a normal distribution with mean zero, and covariance

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(M_{t} M_{s}\right) & =t s E\left(B_{1 / t} B_{1 / s}\right) \\
& =t s\left(\frac{1}{t} \wedge \frac{1}{s}\right)=s \wedge t
\end{aligned}
$$

so that $\left(M_{t}\right)$ is a centred Gaussian process with co-variance function $s \wedge t$. Moreover $t \rightarrow M_{t}$ is continuous for $t>0$. To see the continuity of $M_{t}$ at $t=0$, we use the fact that

$$
\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{t}}{t}=0
$$

which is the law of large numbers for BM . We will not prove this here, but see the remark below.

Remark 4.1.9 To convince yourself why the law of large numbers for BM is true, we may look at a special way $t \rightarrow \infty$ through natural numbers, namely

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{n}}{n}=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{X_{1}+\cdots+X_{n}}{n}
$$

where $X_{i}=B_{i}-B_{i-1}$. Notice that $\left(X_{i}\right)$ is a sequence of independent random variables with identical distribution $N(0,1)$, so that by the strong law of large numbers

$$
\frac{X_{1}+\cdots+X_{n}}{n} \rightarrow E X_{1}=0 \text { almost surely. }
$$

In order to handle the general case $t \geq 0$, we may write $t=[t]+r_{t}$ where $[t]$ is the integer part of $t$ and $r_{t} \in[0,1)$. Then

$$
\frac{B_{t}}{t}=\frac{B_{t}-B_{[t]}}{t}+\frac{[t]}{t} \frac{B_{[t]}}{[t]}
$$

the second term tends to 0 since as $t \rightarrow \infty, \frac{[t]}{t} \rightarrow 1$ and $\frac{B_{[t]}}{[t]} \rightarrow 0$. To see why

$$
\frac{B_{t}-B_{[t]}}{t} \rightarrow 0
$$

as $t \rightarrow \infty$, we need the following Gaussian tail estimate for BM (see section 1.2.3 below)

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{\omega: \sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left|B_{t}(\omega)\right| \geq R\right\} & =2 \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_{R / \sqrt{T}}^{\infty} e^{-x^{2} / 2} d x \\
& \leq 2 \exp \left(-\frac{R^{2}}{2 T}\right) \quad \text { for all } R>0
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows that for any $\varepsilon>0$

$$
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P\left\{\omega: \sup _{t \in[n, n+1]} \frac{\left|B_{t}(\omega)-B_{n}(\omega)\right|}{n} \geq \varepsilon\right\}<\infty
$$

and thus by the Borel-Cantelli lemma

$$
\varlimsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup _{t \in[n, n+1]}\left|\frac{B_{t}}{t}-\frac{B_{n}}{n}\right|=0 \quad \text { almost surely. }
$$

For more detail, see D. Stroock: Probability Theory: An Analytic View, page 180-181.

It is also easy to see from this scaling result that there will be difficulties with the differentiability of Brownian paths. If a standard BM was differentiable at 0 we would need $\lim _{t \downarrow 0} \frac{B_{t}}{t}$ to exist. However by the above

$$
\lim _{t \downarrow 0} \frac{B_{t}}{t}=\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} t B_{1 / t}=\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} M_{t}
$$

in distribution. It is not hard to see that a standard BM has $\sup _{t \geq 0} B_{t}=$ $-\inf _{t \geq 0} B_{t}=\infty$ and hence the limit cannot exist; indeed

$$
\limsup _{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{B_{t}}{t}=-\liminf t \rightarrow 0 \frac{B_{t}}{t}=\infty .
$$

Much more than this is true and we can show that Brownian paths are almost surely not differentiable at any point.

### 4.1.2 Markov property and finite-dimensional distributions

Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a stochastic process on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$. For every $t \geq 0$, set

$$
\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}=\sigma\left\{X_{s}: s \leq t\right\}
$$

which is the smallest $\sigma$-algebra with respect to which every $X_{s}$ (where $s \leq t$ ) is measurable. In particular, for each $t \geq 0, X_{t} \in \mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}$ and in this sense we say $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is adapted to the filtration $\left\{\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right\} .\left\{\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right\}_{t \geq 0}$ is called the filtration generated by $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$.

In this section, we use $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ to denote the filtration generated by a standard Brownian motion $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, and let $\mathcal{F}_{\infty}^{0}=\cup_{t \geq 0} \mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}$.

Lemma 4.1.10 For any $t>s \geq 0$, the increment $B_{t}-B_{s}$ is independent of $\mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$.

Recall that

$$
p(t, x)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi t)^{d / 2}} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2 t}}
$$

in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, and $\left(P_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ the heat semigroup

$$
P_{t} f(x)=\int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(y) p(t, x-y) \mathrm{d} y
$$

for every $t>0$.

Lemma 4.1.11 If $t>s$, then the joint distribution of $B_{s}$ and $B_{t}$ is given by

$$
P\left\{B_{s} \in d x, \quad B_{t} \in d y\right\}=p(s, x) p(t-s, y-x) d x d y
$$

Indeed, since $B_{s}$ and $B_{t}-B_{s}$ are independent, $\left(B_{s}, B_{t}-B_{s}\right)$ has the joint pdf

$$
p\left(s, x_{1}\right) p\left(t-s, x_{2}\right)
$$

and thus, for any bounded Borel measurable function $f$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E f\left(B_{s}, B_{t}\right) & =E f\left(B_{s}, B_{t}-B_{s}+B_{s}\right) \\
& =\iint f\left(x_{1}, x_{2}+x_{1}\right) p\left(s, x_{1}\right) p\left(t-s, x_{2}\right) \mathrm{d} x_{1} \mathrm{~d} x_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Making the change of variables $x_{1}=x$ and $x_{2}+x_{1}=y$ in the last double integral, the induced Jacobian is 1 so that $\mathrm{d} x_{1} \mathrm{~d} x_{2}=\mathrm{d} x \mathrm{~d} y$ (as measures), and therefore

$$
E f\left(B_{s}, B_{t}\right)=\iint f(x, y) p(s, x) p(t-s, y-x) \mathrm{d} x \mathrm{~d} y
$$

which implies that the pdf of $\left(B_{s}, B_{t}\right)$ is $p(s, x) p(t-s, y-x)$.
Theorem 4.1.12 Let $t>s$, and $f$ a bounded Borel measurable function. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=P_{t-s} f\left(B_{s}\right) \quad \text { a.s. } \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\left(P_{t}\right)_{t>0}$ is the heat semigroup. In particular

$$
E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid B_{s}\right\}
$$

which is the Markov property, and $E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}$ equals $F\left(B_{s}\right)$ where

$$
F(x)=P_{t-s} f(x) \equiv \frac{1}{(2 \pi(t-s))^{d / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(y) e^{-\frac{|x-y|^{2}}{2(t-s)}} d y
$$

Proof. First we show the Markov property of Brownian motion, that

$$
E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid B_{s}\right\} .
$$

Clearly we only need to prove this for bounded continuous (and smooth) functions $f$. For such a function, we can show that

$$
f(x+y)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{N_{n}} f_{n_{k}}(x) g_{n_{k}}(y)
$$

for some functions $f_{n_{k}}, g_{n_{k}}$ (for example, by taking the Taylor expansion of $f(x+y)$ ). Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} & =E\left\{f\left(B_{s}+B_{t}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{N_{n}} E\left\{f_{n_{k}}\left(B_{s}\right) g_{n_{k}}\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{N_{n}} E\left\{g_{n_{k}}\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} f_{n_{k}}\left(B_{s}\right) \\
& =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{N_{n}} f_{n_{k}}\left(B_{s}\right) E\left\{f_{n_{k}}\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)\right\} \\
& =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{N_{n}} f_{n_{k}}\left(B_{s}\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f_{n_{k}}(z) p(t-s, z) d z
\end{aligned}
$$

which depends only on $B_{s}$, and can therefore be written as $F\left(B_{s}\right)$. In particular

$$
E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid B_{s}\right\}=F\left(B_{s}\right)
$$

To compute the conditional expectation $E\left\{f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid B_{s}\right\}$, we use the fact that the pdf of $\left(B_{s}, B_{t}\right)$ is

$$
p(s, x) p(t-s, y-x)
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left\{1_{A}\left(B_{s}\right) f\left(B_{t}\right)\right\} & =\iint 1_{A}(x) f(y) p(s, x) p(t-s, y-x) \mathrm{d} x \mathrm{~d} y \\
& =\int 1_{A}(x) P_{t-s} f(x) p(s, x) \mathrm{d} x \\
& =E\left\{1_{A}\left(B_{s}\right) P_{t-s} f\left(B_{s}\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

as

$$
P_{t-s} f(x)=\int f(y) p(t-s, y-x) \mathrm{d} y
$$

Since $P_{t-s} f\left(B_{s}\right)$ is a function of $B_{s}$ so that

$$
E\left(f\left(B_{t}\right) \mid B_{s}\right)=P_{t-s} f\left(B_{s}\right)
$$

The family of finite-dimensional distributions of BM can be expressed in terms of the Gaussian density function $p(t, x)$.

Proposition 4.1.13 For any $0<t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{n}$, the ( $\mathbb{R}^{n \times d}$-valued) random variable $\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right)$ has a $p d f$

$$
p\left(t_{1}, x_{1}\right) p\left(t_{2}-t_{1}, x_{2}-x_{1}\right) \cdots p\left(t_{n}-t_{n-1}, x_{n}-x_{n-1}\right)
$$

where

$$
p(t, x)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi t)^{d / 2}} e^{-|x|^{2} /(2 t)}
$$

is a standard Gaussian pdf in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. That is, the joint distribution of $\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right)$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P\left\{B_{t_{1}} \in d x_{1}, \cdots, \quad B_{t_{n}} \in d x_{n}\right\} \\
= & \left.p\left(t_{1}, x_{1}\right) p\left(t_{2}-t_{1}, x_{2}-x_{1}\right) \cdots p\left(t_{n}-t_{n-1}, x_{n}-x_{n-1}\right) d x_{1} \cdots d x_{2} 4.3\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. Let $f$ be a bounded, continuous function. We want to calculate

$$
E\left(f\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right)\right)
$$

One can use the fact that the increments $B_{t_{1}}, B_{t_{2}}-B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}-B_{t_{n-1}}$ are independent, and have the joint distribution with pdf

$$
p\left(t_{1}, z_{1}\right) p\left(t_{2}-t_{1}, z_{2}\right) \cdots p\left(t_{n}-t_{n-1}, z_{n}\right)
$$

The equation (4.3) then follows after a change of variables.
We can also show this with an induction argument which uses only the Markov property. Indeed, by the Markov property

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(f_{1}\left(B_{t_{1}}\right) \cdots f_{n}\left(B_{t_{n}}\right)\right) \\
= & E\left\{E\left(f_{1}\left(B_{t_{1}}\right) \cdots f_{n}\left(B_{t_{n}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{n-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
= & E\left\{f_{1}\left(B_{t_{1}}\right) \cdots f_{n-1}\left(B_{t_{n-1}}\right) E\left(f_{n}\left(B_{t_{n}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{n-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
= & E\left\{f_{1}\left(B_{t_{1}}\right) \cdots f_{n-1}\left(B_{t_{n-1}}\right)\left(P_{t_{n}-t_{n-1}} f_{n}\right)\left(B_{t_{n-1}}\right)\right\} \\
= & E\left\{f_{1}\left(B_{t_{1}}\right) \cdots f_{n-2}\left(B_{t_{n-2}}\right)\left(f_{n-1} P_{t_{n}-t_{n-1}} f_{n}\right)\left(B_{t_{n-1}}\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

which reduces the number of time points $t_{i}$ to $n-1$, so the conclusion follows from the induction immediately.

Corollary 4.1.14 Let $B_{t}=\left(B_{t}^{1}, \cdots, B_{t}^{d}\right)$ be a d-dimensional standard Brownian motion. Then for each $j, B_{t}^{j}$ is a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$, and $\left(B_{t}^{j}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ ( $j=1, \cdots, d$ ) are mutually independent.

Therefore a $d$-dimensional BM consists of $d$ independent copies of BM in $\mathbb{R}$.

### 4.1.3 The reflection principle

Brownian motion starts afresh at a stopping time, i.e. the Markov property for Brownian motion remains true at stopping times. Therefore Brownian motion possesses what is called the strong Markov property, a very important property which was used by Paul Lévy in the form of the reflection principle, long before the concept of the strong Markov property had been properly defined. We will exhibit this principle and use it in computing the distribution of the running maximum of a Brownian motion.

Theorem 4.1.15 (The reflection principle) Let $T$ be a stopping time and $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} a B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$. If we set

$$
W_{t}=\begin{array}{ll}
B_{t} & t<T \\
2 B_{T}-B_{t} & t \geq T,
\end{array}
$$

then $W$ is a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$.

In many applications, especially in statistics, we would like to estimate distributions of running maxima of a stochastic process. For Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, the distribution of $\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s}$ can be derived by means of the reflection principle.

Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard Brownian motion on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ in $\mathbb{R}$. Let $b>0$ and $b>a$, and let

$$
T_{b}=\inf \left\{t>0: B_{t}=b\right\} .
$$

Then $T_{b}$ is a stopping time, (and the Brownian motion starts afresh as a standard Brownian motion after hitting $b$ ), by the reflection principle

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s} \geq b, B_{t} \leq a\right\} & =P\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s} \geq b, 2 B_{T_{b}}-B_{t} \leq a\right\} \\
& =P\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} b_{s} \geq b, B_{t} \geq 2 b-a\right\} \\
& =P\left\{B_{t} \geq 2 b-a\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As the events

$$
\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s} \geq b\right\}=\left\{T_{b} \leq t\right\}
$$

the above equation may be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{T_{b} \leq t, B_{t} \leq a\right\} & =P\left\{T_{b} \leq t, B_{t} \geq 2 b-a\right\} \\
& =P\left\{B_{t} \geq 2 b-a\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
P\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s} \geq b, B_{t} \leq a\right\}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \int_{2 b-a}^{+\infty} e^{-\frac{x^{2}}{2 t}} \mathrm{~d} t,
$$

which gives us the joint distribution of a Brownian motion and its maximum at a fixed time $t$. By differentiating in $a$ and in $b$ we conclude the following

Theorem 4.1.16 Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$, and let $t>0$.
Then the pdf of the joint distribution of random variables $\left(M_{t}=\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s}, B_{t}\right)$ is given as

$$
P\left\{M_{t} \in d b, B_{t} \in d a\right\}=\frac{2(2 b-a)}{\sqrt{2 \pi t^{3}}} \exp \left\{-\frac{(2 b-a)^{2}}{2 t}\right\} d a d b
$$

over the region $\{(b, a): a \leq b, b \geq 0\}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{2}$.

In particular, for any $b>0$,

$$
P\left(B_{t} \geq b\right)=P\left(B_{t} \geq b, T_{b} \leq t\right)=P\left(B_{t-T_{b}} \geq b, T_{b} \leq t\right) .
$$

By the strong Markov property $B_{t-T_{b}}$ is a Brownian motion started from $b$ and is independent of $T_{b}$ and hence

$$
P\left(B_{t} \geq b\right)=\frac{1}{2} P\left(T_{b} \leq t\right) .
$$

Thus we have the result that

$$
P\left\{\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s} \geq b\right\}=2 P\left(B_{t} \geq b\right)=\frac{2}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \int_{b}^{\infty} \exp \left(-\frac{x^{2}}{2 t}\right) \mathrm{d} x,
$$

which is the exact distribution function of $\sup _{s \in[0, t]} B_{s}$ (and the stopping time $T_{b}$ ) and leads to an exact formula for the tail probability of the Brownian motion.

### 4.1.4 Martingale property

Let $B=\left(B_{t}^{i}\right)_{t \geq 0}(i=1, \cdots, d)$ be a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, with its generated filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. Brownian motion is a martingale and indeed can be characterised by its martingales.

Proposition 4.1.17 1) Each $B_{t}$ has finite $p$-th moment for any $p>0$, and for $t>s$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(\left|B_{t}-B_{s}\right|^{p}\right)=c_{p, d}|t-s|^{p / 2} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

2) $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous, square-integrable martingale.
3) For each pair $i, j, M_{t}^{i j}=B_{t}^{i} B_{t}^{j}-\delta_{i j} t$ is a continuous martingale.

Proof. The first part was proved before.
Since $B_{t}-B_{s}$ is independent of $\mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$ when $t>s$ we thus have

$$
E\left(B_{t}-B_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=E\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)=0
$$

so that

$$
E\left(B_{t} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=E\left(B_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=B_{s}
$$

so that $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous martingale.
We only need to show 3 ) for BM in $\mathbb{R}$. In this case

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(B_{t}^{2}-B_{s}^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)= & E\left(\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
& +E\left(2 B_{s}\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
= & E\left(\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)^{2}\right)+2 B_{s} E\left(\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
= & E\left(B_{t}-B_{s}\right)^{2} \\
= & t-s
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(B_{t}^{2}-t \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) & =\mathbb{E}\left(B_{s}^{2}-s \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
& =B_{s}^{2}-s
\end{aligned}
$$

which shows that $B_{t}^{2}-t$ is a martingale.
Theorem 4.1.18 Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous stochastic process in $\mathbb{R}$ such that $B_{0}=0$. Then $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$, if and only if for any $\xi \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t>s$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left\{\exp \left(i\left\langle\xi, B_{t}-B_{s}\right\rangle\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=\exp \left(-\frac{(t-s)|\xi|^{2}}{2}\right) \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. We observe that (4.5) implies $B_{t}-B_{s}$ is independent of $\mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$ and has normal distribution with variance $t-s$. Conversely, if $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard BM in $\mathbb{R}$, then $B_{t}-B_{s}$ is independent of $\mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$, and $B_{t}-B_{s}$ has a normal distribution of mean zero and variance $(t-s)$, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left\{\exp \left(i\left\langle\xi, B_{t}-B_{s}\right\rangle\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
= & E\left\{\exp \left(i\left\langle\xi, B_{t}-B_{s}\right\rangle\right)\right\} \\
= & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi(t-s)}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\langle\xi, x\rangle-\frac{|x|^{2}}{2(t-s)}} \mathrm{d} x \\
= & \exp \left(-\frac{(t-s)|\xi|^{2}}{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 4.1.19 Let $\left(B_{t}\right)$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$. If $\xi \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$
M_{t} \equiv \exp \left(i\left\langle\xi, B_{t}\right\rangle+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} t\right)
$$

is a martingale.
Remark 4.1.20 Note that both sides of (4.5) are analytic in $\xi$ so that the identity continues to hold for any complex vector $\xi$. In particular, by replacing $\xi$ by $-i \xi$ we obtain that

$$
E\left\{\exp \left(\left\langle\xi, B_{t}-B_{s}\right\rangle\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=\exp \left(\frac{(t-s)|\xi|^{2}}{2}\right)
$$

so that for any vector $\xi$

$$
\exp \left(\left\langle\xi, B_{t}\right\rangle-\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} t\right)
$$

is a continuous martingale. This statement will be extended to vector fields $\xi$ in $\mathbb{R}$. The resulting identity is called the Cameron-Martin formula.

BM is a basic example of a Lévy process. These are right continuous stochastic processes in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ which possess stationary independent increments, and (4.5) is the Lévy-Khinchin formula for BM. In general if $\left(X_{t}\right)$ is a Lévy process in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, then

$$
E\left\{\exp \left(i\left\langle\xi, X_{t}-X_{s}\right\rangle\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=\exp (\psi(\xi)(t-s))
$$

for $t>s$ and $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, where

$$
\begin{align*}
\psi(\xi)= & -\frac{1}{2}\left\langle A A^{T} \xi, \xi\right\rangle+i\langle b, \xi\rangle \\
& +\int_{\mathbb{R}^{d} \backslash\{0\}}\left(e^{i\langle\xi, x\rangle}-1-i 1_{\{|x|<1\}}\langle\xi, x\rangle\right) \nu(d x) \tag{4.6}
\end{align*}
$$

for some $d \times r$ matrix $A$, vector $b$ and Lévy measure $\nu(d x)$ of $\left(X_{t}\right)$ which is a $\sigma$-finite measure on $\mathbb{R}^{d} \backslash\{0\}$ satisfying the following integrability condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\mathbb{R}^{d} \backslash\{0\}} \frac{|x|^{2}}{1+|x|^{2}} \nu(d x)<+\infty . \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The equation (4.6) is the Lévy-Khintchine formula for the general Lévy process.

### 4.2 The quadratic variation process

As we have seen, both (one-dimensional) Brownian motion $B_{t}$ and $M_{t} \equiv$ $B_{t}^{2}-t$ are martingales, and thus

$$
B_{t}^{2}=M_{t}+A_{t}
$$

where of course $A_{t}=t$. Therefore, the continuous sub-martingale $B_{t}^{2}$ is a sum of a martingale and an adapted increasing process. We will see this decomposition for $B_{t}^{2}$ is the key to establishing Itô's integration theory.

Let

$$
D=\left\{0=t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<t_{n}=t\right\}
$$

be a finite partition of the interval $[0, t]$, and let

$$
V_{D}=\sum_{l=1}^{n}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}
$$

the quadratic variation of $B$ over the partition $D$, which is a non-negative random variable. We will consider the behaviour of this random variable as the partition is refined.

Lemma 4.2.1 The random variable $V_{D}$ has

$$
E V_{D}=t
$$

and variance

$$
E\left\{\left(V_{D}-E V_{D}\right)^{2}\right\}=2 \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2}
$$

Proof. Indeed

$$
\begin{aligned}
E V_{D} & =\sum_{l=1}^{n} E\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2} \\
& =\sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right) \\
& =t .
\end{aligned}
$$

To prove the second formula we proceed as follows

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left\{\left(V_{D}-E V_{D}\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & E\left\{\left(\sum_{l=1}^{n}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-t\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & E\left\{\left(\sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\right)\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & \sum_{k, l=1}^{n} E\left\{\left(\left|B_{t_{k}}-B_{t_{k-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{k}-t_{k-1}\right)\right)\left(\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\right)\right\} \\
= & \sum_{l=1}^{n} E\left\{\left(\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\right)^{2}\right\} \\
& +\sum_{k \neq l}^{n} E\left\{\left(\left|B_{t_{k}}-B_{t_{k-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{k}-t_{k-1}\right)\right)\left(\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\right)\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the increments over different intervals are independent, so that the expectation of each product in the last sum on the right-hand side equals
the product of their expectations, which gives contribution zero, therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left\{\left(V_{D}-E V_{D}\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & \sum_{l=1}^{n} E\left\{\left(\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & \sum_{l=1}^{n} E\left\{\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{4}-2\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}+\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left\{E\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{4}-2\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right) E\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}+\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2}\right\} \\
= & 2 \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the moment result that

$$
E\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{4}=3\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2} .
$$

We are now in a position to prove the following.
Theorem 4.2.2 Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$. Then

$$
\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}=t \quad \text { in } L^{2}(\Omega, P)
$$

for any $t$, where $D$ runs over all finite partitions of the interval $[0, t]$, and

$$
m(D)=\max _{l}\left|t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right| .
$$

Therefore

$$
\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}=t \quad \text { in probability. }
$$

Proof. According to the previous lemma we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|\sum_{l}\right| B_{t_{l}}-\left.B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left.t\right|^{2} & =E\left|V_{D}-E\left(V_{D}\right)\right|^{2} \\
& =2 \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)^{2} \\
& \leq 2 m(D) \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right) \\
& =2 t m(D)
\end{aligned}
$$

and therefore

$$
\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} E\left|\sum_{l}\right| B_{t_{l}}-\left.B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}-\left.t\right|^{2}=0
$$

For good partitions the convergence in the above theorem takes place almost surely. To this end, we recall the Borel-Cantelli lemma: if $\sum_{n}^{\infty} P\left(A_{n}\right)<$ $\infty$, then $\limsup _{n} A_{n}=0$, where

$$
\begin{aligned}
\limsup _{n} A_{n} & =\bigcap_{m=1}^{\infty} \bigcup_{n=m}^{\infty} A_{n} \\
& =\left\{\omega \text { belongs to infinitely many } A_{n}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

If in addition $\left\{A_{n}\right\}$ are independent, then $\sum_{n}^{\infty} P\left(A_{n}\right)=\infty$ if and only if

$$
P\left(\limsup _{n} A_{n}\right)=1 .
$$

Proposition 4.2.3 Let $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$. Then for any $t>0$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{2^{n}}\left|B_{\frac{j}{2^{n}} t}-B_{\frac{j-1}{2^{n}} t}\right|^{2} \rightarrow t \quad \text { a.s. } \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
Proof. Let $D_{n}$ be the dyadic partition of $[0, t]$

$$
D_{n}=\left\{0=\frac{0}{2^{n}} t<\frac{1}{2^{n}} t<\cdots<\frac{2^{n}}{2^{n}} t=t\right\} .
$$

and $V_{n}$ denote $V_{D_{n}}$. Then, according to Lemma 4.2.1, $E V_{n}=t$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left|V_{n}-E V_{n}\right|^{2} & =2 \sum_{l=1}^{2^{n}}\left(\frac{l}{2^{n}} t-\frac{l-1}{2^{n}} t\right)^{2} \\
& =22^{n}\left(\frac{1}{2^{n}} t\right)^{2} \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{n-1}} t^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, by Markov's inequality,

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{\left|V_{n}-E V_{n}\right| \geq \frac{1}{n}\right\} & \leq n^{2} E\left|V_{n}-E V_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& =\frac{n^{2}}{2^{n-1}} t^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} P\left\{\left|V_{n}-E V_{n}\right| \geq \frac{1}{n}\right\}=t^{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{2}}{2^{n-1}}<+\infty
$$

By the Borel-Cantelli lemma, it follows that $V_{n} \rightarrow t$ almost surely.
Remark 4.2.4 Indeed the conclusion is true for monotone partitions. More precisely, for each $n$ let

$$
D_{n}=\left\{0=t_{n, 0}<t_{1, n}<\cdots<t_{n_{k}, n}=t\right\}
$$

be a finite partition of $[0, t]$. Suppose $D_{n+1} \supset D_{n}$ and

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} m\left(D_{n}\right)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \max \left|t_{n_{i}, n}-t_{n_{i-1}, n}\right|=0 .
$$

Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n_{k}}\left|B_{t_{n_{i}, n}}-B_{t_{n_{i-1}, n}}\right|^{2} \rightarrow t \quad \text { a.s. } \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$. This follows from the martingale convergence theorem applied to a suitable martingale and is left as an exercise.

It can be shown (not easy) that

$$
\sup _{D} \sum_{l}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{p}<\infty \quad \text { a.s. }
$$

if $p>2$, where the supremum is taken over all finite partitions of $[0,1]$, and

$$
\sup _{D} \sum_{l}\left|B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}=\infty \quad \text { a.s. }
$$

That is to say, Brownian motion has finite $p$-variation for any $p>2$ but infinite 2 -variation. Indeed almost all Brownian motion sample paths are $\alpha$-Hölder continuous for any $\alpha<1 / 2$ but not for $\alpha=1 / 2$. It follows that almost all Brownian motion paths are nowhere differentiable. We will not go into a deep study of the sample paths of BM, as this is not needed in order to develop Itô's calculus for Brownian motion.

Definition 4.2.5 Let $p>0$ be a constant. A path $f(t)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ [a function on $[0, T]$ valued in $\left.\mathbb{R}^{d}\right]$ is said to have finite $p$-variation on $[0, T]$, if

$$
\sup _{D} \sum_{l}\left|f\left(t_{i}\right)-f\left(t_{i-1}\right)\right|^{p}<\infty
$$

where $D$ runs over all finite partitions of $[0, T] . f(t)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ has finite (total) variation if it has finite 1-variation.

A function with finite variation must be a difference of two increasing functions. It particular, it has at most countably many points of discontinuity.

A stochastic process $V=\left(V_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is called a finite variation process, if for almost all $\omega \in \Omega$, the sample path $t \rightarrow V_{t}(\omega)$ possesses finite variation on any finite interval. A Brownian motion is not a finite variation process.

If $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous, square-integrable martingale, then by Jensen's inequality $\left(M_{t}^{2}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a sub-martingale, except for the trivial case. As in the case of Brownian motion, the following limit

$$
\langle M\rangle_{t}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l}\left|M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right|^{2}
$$

exists both in probability and in $L^{2}$, where the limit is taken over all finite partitions $D$ of the interval $[0, t] .\left\{\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\}_{t \geq 0}$ is called the quadratic variation process of $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, or simply the bracket process of $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. The quadratic variation process $t \rightarrow\langle M\rangle_{t}$ is an adapted, continuous, increasing stochastic process (and therefore has finite variation) with initial value zero. The following theorem demonstrates the importance of $\langle M\rangle_{t}$.

Theorem 4.2.6 (The quadratic variation process) Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous, square-integrable martingale. Then $\langle M\rangle_{t}$ is the unique continuous, adapted and increasing process with initial value zero, such that $M_{t}^{2}-\langle M\rangle_{t}$ is a martingale.

The process $\langle M\rangle$ is called the quadratic variation process associated with the martingale $M$. The theorem is a special case of the Doob-Meyer decomposition for sub-martingales: any sub-martingale can be decomposed into a sum of a martingale and a predictable, increasing process with initial value zero. The decomposition was conjectured by Doob, and proved by P. A. Meyer in the 60 's, which opened the way for the general development of stochastic calculus.

Remark 4.2.7 If $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous martingale, and $A=\left(A_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is an adapted, continuous and integrable increasing process, then $X=M+A$ is a continuous sub-martingale. The reverse statement is also true, that is the content of the Doob-Meyer decomposition theorem.

We can see this easily in discrete time. Consider a sub-martingale in discrete-time: $X=\left(X_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$with respect to the filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$. A sequence $\left(A_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}}$may be defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{0}=0 ; \\
& A_{n}=A_{n-1}+E\left(X_{n}-X_{n-1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n-1}\right), \quad n=1,2, \cdots .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

1. As $X$ is submartingale $E\left(X_{n}-X_{n-1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n-1}\right)=E\left(X_{n} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n-1}\right)-X_{n-1} \geq 0$, and hence $\left(A_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbf{Z}^{+}}$is increasing.
2. $A_{n} \in \mathcal{F}_{n-1}$, so that $\left(A_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbf{Z}^{+}}$is predictable!
3. By definition

$$
E\left(X_{n}-A_{n} \mid \mathcal{F}_{n-1}\right)=X_{n-1}-A_{n-1}, \quad n=1,2, \cdots,
$$

therefore $M_{n}=X_{n}-A_{n}$ is a martingale.
Theorem 4.2.8 Let $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $\left(N_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be two continuous, square-integrable martingales, and let

$$
\langle M, N\rangle_{t}=\frac{1}{4}\left(\langle M+N\rangle_{t}-\langle M-N\rangle_{t}\right) .
$$

This process is called the quadratic covariation or bracket process of $M$ and $N$. Then $\langle M, N\rangle_{t}$ is the unique adapted, continuous, variation process with initial value zero, such that $M_{t} N_{t}-\langle M, N\rangle_{t}$ is a martingale. Moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)\left(N_{t_{l}}-N_{t_{l-1}}\right)=\langle M, N\rangle_{t}, \quad \text { in prob. } \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $D=\left\{0=t_{0}<\cdots<t_{n}=t\right\}$ and $m(D)=\max _{l}\left(t_{l}-t_{l-1}\right)$.
If $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, then for any $f \in C_{b}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$

$$
M_{t}^{f} \equiv f\left(B_{t}\right)-f\left(B_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{2} \Delta f\left(B_{s}\right) d s
$$

is a continuous martingale (with respect to the natural filtration generated by the Brownian motion $\left.\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}\right)$, and

$$
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t}\langle\nabla f, \nabla g\rangle\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
$$

These claims will be proven below after we have established Itô's formula for Brownian motion.

## Chapter 5

## Itô calculus

In this Chapter we develop Itô's integration theory in a traditional way. We first define the stochastic integral $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} d B_{s}$ for adapted simple processes $\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, then extend the definition to a large class of integrands by exploiting the martingale characterization of the Itô integral.

### 5.1 Introduction

Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}$ on a complete probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ and let $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be the filtration generated by $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, which we sometimes call the Brownian filtration. That is, for each $t \geq 0$

$$
\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}=\sigma\left\{B_{s} \text { for } s \leq t\right\}
$$

which represents the history of the Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ up to time $t$.

We are going to define Itô integrals of the following form

$$
I_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s} \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq 0
$$

where $I$ is a continuous stochastic process, where the integrand $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a stochastic process satisfying certain conditions that will be described later. For example, we would like to define integrals such as

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

for Borel measurable functions $f$.

Since, for almost all $\omega \in \Omega$, the sample path of Brownian motion $t \rightarrow$ $B_{t}(\omega)$ is nowhere differentiable, the obvious definition via Riemann sums

$$
\sum_{i} F_{t_{i}^{*}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)
$$

does not work: the limit of the Riemann sums does not exist pathwise. However the limit does exist in a probabilistic sense, if for any finite partition we properly choose $t_{i}^{*} \in\left[t_{i-1}, t_{i}\right]$ and if the integrand process $\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is adapted to the Brownian filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. That is to say, for every $t \geq 0$, $F_{t}$ is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}$. We will see that this approach works because both $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $\left(B_{t}^{2}-t\right)_{t \geq 0}$ are continuous martingales.

In summary, the Itô integral $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}$ of an adapted process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ (such that $F$ is measurable with respect to the product $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{B}([0, \infty)) \otimes$ $\left.\mathcal{F}_{\infty}^{0}\right)$ with respect to the Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ may be simply defined to be the limit of a special sort of Riemann sum:

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{i} F_{t_{i-1}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)
$$

where the limit is taken in the $L^{2}$-sense (with respect to the product measure $P(\mathrm{~d} \omega) \otimes \mathrm{d} t)$, over finite partitions

$$
D=\left\{0=t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<t_{n}=t\right\}
$$

of $[0, t]$ so that $m(D)=\max _{i}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right) \rightarrow 0$. We choose $F_{t_{i-1}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)$ as this is the only choice giving

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)\right)=0 \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)^{2}-F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right)\right)=0 \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

It will become clear that it is these important features that mean that this sort of Riemann sum converges to a martingale! Thus (5.1), (5.2) imply that both the Itô integral

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}
$$

and

$$
\left(\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}\right)^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
$$

are martingales.

Indeed, since $F_{t_{i-1}}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}$-measurable, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)\right) & =E\left\{E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
& =E\left\{F_{t_{i-1}} E\left(\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
& =E\left(F_{t_{i-1}} E\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)\right) \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, since $B_{t}^{2}-t$ is a martingale, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)^{2}-\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right) \\
= & E\left(B_{t_{i}}^{2}-t_{i} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right)-2 E\left(B_{t_{i-1}} B_{t_{i}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right) \\
& +B_{t_{i-1}}^{2}+t_{i-1} \\
= & 2 B_{t_{i-1}}^{2}-2 B_{t_{i-1}} E\left(B_{t_{i}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right) \\
= & 0
\end{aligned}
$$

and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)^{2}-F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right)\right) \\
= & E\left\{E\left(F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)^{2}-F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
= & E\left\{F_{t_{i-1}}^{2} E\left(\left(B_{t_{i}}-B_{t_{i-1}}\right)^{2}-F_{t_{i-1}}^{2}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}^{0}\right)\right\} \\
= & 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Itô's integration theory can be established for continuous, square-integrable martingales by the same approach. In fact, if $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous, square-integrable martingale on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ and $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is an adapted stochastic process, then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} F_{t_{l-1}}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)
$$

exists under certain integrability conditions.
The Stratonovich integral $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s}$, which was discovered later than Itô's, is defined on the other hand by

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{F_{t_{l-1}}+F_{t_{l}}}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)
$$

which in general is different from the Itô integral $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}$.
An example to illustrate this is the following integral. Using the definition for the Itô integral

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s} & =\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} M_{t_{l-1}}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& =\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left\{-\frac{1}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}^{2}-M_{t_{l-1}}^{2}\right)\right\} \\
& =-\frac{1}{2} \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(M_{t_{l}}^{2}-M_{t_{l-1}}^{2}\right) \\
& =-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}+\frac{1}{2}\left(M_{t}^{2}-M_{0}^{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

That is

$$
M_{t}^{2}-M_{0}^{2}=2 \int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\langle M\rangle_{t}
$$

On the other hand, for the Stratonovich integral

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s} & =\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{M_{t_{l}}+M_{t_{l-1}}}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)^{2}+\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} M_{t_{l-1}}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}+\int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left(M_{t}^{2}-M_{0}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
M_{t}^{2}-M_{0}^{2}=2 \int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s} .
$$

If we compare this with classical calculus we see that the Stratonovich version coincides with the fundamental theorem of standard calculus but the Itô version has a correction term.

In general, we have
Lemma 5.1.1 Let $N, M$ be two continuous, square-integrable martingales, and $F_{t}=N_{t}+A_{t}$ where $A_{t}$ is an adapted process with finite variation. The

Stratonovich integral of $F$ against $M$ is defined to be

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ d M_{s}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l} \frac{F_{t_{l}}+F_{t_{l-1}}}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right)
$$

Then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ d M_{s}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} d M_{s}+\frac{1}{2}\langle N, M\rangle_{t}
$$

Indeed,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s}= & \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{N_{t_{l}}+N_{t_{l-1}}}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& +\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{A_{t_{l}}+A_{t_{l-1}}}{2}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
= & \frac{1}{2} \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(N_{t_{l}}-N_{t_{l-1}}\right)\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& +\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n} F_{t_{l-1}}\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l=1}^{n}\left(A_{t_{l}}-A_{t_{l-1}}\right)\left(M_{t_{l}}-M_{t_{l-1}}\right) \\
= & \frac{1}{2}\langle M, N\rangle_{t}+\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s} .
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, if $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a process with finite variation, then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \circ \mathrm{~d} M_{s}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}
$$

From now on we will concentrate on Itô integrals only. The properties of Stratonovich integrals can be deduced from the observations above.

### 5.2 Stochastic integrals for simple processes

An adapted stochastic process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is called a simple process, if it has a representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{t}(\omega)=f(\omega) 1_{\{0\}}(t)+\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} f_{i}(\omega) 1_{\left(t_{i}, t_{i+1}\right]}(t) \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $0=t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<t_{i} \rightarrow \infty$, so that for any finite time $T \geq 0$, there are only finite many $t_{i} \in[0, T]$, each $f_{i} \in \mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}$ (that is $f_{i}$ is measurable with respect to $\left.\mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}\right), f_{0} \in \mathcal{F}_{0}^{0}$, and $F$ is a bounded process. The space of all simple (adapted) stochastic processes will be denoted by $\mathcal{L}_{0}$. If $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}_{0}$, then the Itô integral of $F$ against Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is defined as

$$
I(F)_{t} \equiv \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} f_{i}\left(B_{t \wedge t_{i+1}}-B_{t \wedge t_{i}}\right)
$$

where the sum makes sense because only finitely many terms will not vanish. It is obvious that $I(F)=\left(I(F)_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is continuous, square-integrable, and adapted to $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$.

Lemma 5.2.1 Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous, square-integrable martingale, and $s<t \leq u<v, F \in \mathcal{\mathcal { F } _ { s } ^ { 0 }}, G \in \mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}$. Then

$$
E\left(G\left(M_{v}-M_{u}\right)\left(M_{t}-M_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0
$$

and

$$
E\left(F\left(M_{t}-M_{s}\right)^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=E\left(F\left(\langle M\rangle_{t}-\langle M\rangle_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)
$$

Proof. By the tower property of conditional expectations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(G\left(M_{v}-M_{u}\right)\left(M_{t}-M_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
& =E\left\{E\left(G\left(M_{v}-M_{u}\right)\left(M_{t}-M_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{u}^{0}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& =E\left\{G\left(M_{t}-M_{s}\right) E\left(M_{v}-M_{u} \mid \mathcal{F}_{u}^{0}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The second equality is trivial as $F \in \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$ and hence it can be moved out from the conditional expectation.

Lemma 5.2.2 If $F \in \mathcal{L}_{0}$, then $\left(I(F)_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0, \quad \forall t>s
$$

Proof. Assume that $t_{j}<t \leq t_{j+1}, t_{k}<s \leq t_{k+1}$ for some $k, j \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $k \leq j$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& I(F)_{t}=\sum_{i=0}^{j-1} F_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)+F_{j}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right) \\
& I(F)_{s}=\sum_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)+F_{k}\left(B_{s}-B_{t_{k}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $k<j-1$, then

$$
\begin{align*}
I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}= & \sum_{i=k+1}^{j-1} F_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right) \\
& +F_{j}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right)+F_{k}\left(B_{t_{k+1}}-B_{s}\right) . \tag{5.4}
\end{align*}
$$

If $k+1 \leq i \leq j-1, s \leq t_{i}$ so that $\mathcal{F}_{s}^{0} \subset \mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(F_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right) \\
&=E\left\{E\left(\left\{F_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}\right\} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}\right. \\
& \quad=E\left\{F_{i} E\left\{B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}\right\} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& \quad=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The first equality follows from $F_{i} \in \mathcal{F}_{t_{i}}^{0}$, and the second equality follows from the fact that $\left(B_{t}\right)$ is a martingale. Similarly

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left(F_{j}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0, \quad t>t_{j} \geq s, F_{j} \in \mathcal{F}_{t_{j}}^{0} \\
& E\left(F_{k}\left(B_{t_{k+1}}-B_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0, \quad t_{k+1} \geq s>t_{k}, F_{k} \in \mathcal{F}_{t_{k}}^{0} \subset \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Putting these equations together we obtain

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0 .
$$

If $k=j-1$, then $t_{j-1}<s \leq t_{j}<t \leq t_{j+1}$ and

$$
I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}=F_{j-1}\left(B_{t_{j}}-B_{s}\right)+F_{j}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right)
$$

we thus again have

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0 .
$$

Lemma 5.2.3 $\left(I(F)_{t}^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} d s\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale. Therefore $I(F) \in$ $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ and

$$
\langle I(F)\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} d s
$$

Proof. We want to prove that for any $t \geq s$

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{u}^{2} d u \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=I(F)_{s}^{2}-\int_{0}^{s} F_{u}^{2} d u
$$

In other words, we have to prove that

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}^{2}-I(F)_{s}^{2}-\int_{s}^{t} F_{u}^{2} d u \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0
$$

Obviously

$$
\begin{aligned}
I(F)_{t}^{2}-I(F)_{s}^{2} & =\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2}-2 I(F)_{t} I(F)_{s}-2 I(F)_{s}^{2} \\
& =\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2}-2\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right) I(F)_{s},
\end{aligned}
$$

and $\left(I(F)_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale, so that

$$
E\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)=0 .
$$

While, $I(F)_{s} \in \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}$ so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left\{I(F)_{s}\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& \quad=I(F)_{s} E\left\{I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

We therefore only need to show

$$
E\left\{\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2}-\int_{s}^{t} F_{u}^{2} d u \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=0
$$

Now we use the same notation as in the proof of Lemma 5.2.2.
It is clear from eqn 5.4 that if $k<j-1$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2}= & \sum_{i, l=k+1}^{j-1} F_{i} F_{l}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)\left(B_{t_{l+1}}-B_{t_{l}}\right) \\
& +\sum_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i} F_{j}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right) \\
& +\sum_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i} F_{k}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)\left(B_{t_{k+1}}-B_{s}\right) \\
& +F_{j}^{2}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{j}}\right)^{2}+F_{k}^{2}\left(B_{t_{k+1}}-B_{s}\right)^{2} \\
& +F_{k} f_{j}\left(B_{t}-B_{t_{i}}\right)\left(B_{t_{k+1}}-B_{s}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Using Lemma 5.2.1 and the fact that both $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $\left(B_{t}^{2}-t\right)_{t \geq 0}$ are martingales, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
E & \left\{\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\} \\
& =E\left(\sum_{j=k+1}^{j-1} F_{i}^{2}\left(t_{i+1}-t_{i}\right)+F_{j}^{2}\left(t-t_{j}\right)+F_{k}^{2}\left(t_{k+1}-s\right) \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
E\left\{\left(I(F)_{t}-I(F)_{s}\right)^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right\}=E\left(\int_{s}^{t} F_{u}^{2} d u \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}^{0}\right)
$$

The final statement is just the Doob-Meyer decomposition of $I(F)^{2}$.
Lemma 5.2.4 $F \rightarrow I(F)$ is linear, and for any $T \geq 0$

$$
E\left(I(F)_{T}^{2}\right)=E\left(\int_{0}^{T} F_{s}^{2} d s\right) .
$$

### 5.3 Stochastic integrals for adapted processes

In this section we extend the definition of the Itô integral to integrands which are limits of simple processes. Obviously we only need to define Itô integrals $I(F)_{t}$ for $t \leq T$ for arbitrary positive numbers $T$. Thus, throughout this section, we are given an arbitrary but fixed time $T>0$.

### 5.3.1 The space of square-integrable martingales

If $F$ is a simple process, then the Ito integral $I(F)$ is a continuous, squareintegrable martingale with initial value zero, and its bracket process is given by $\langle I(F)\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s$. In particular we have the Itô isometry

$$
E\left|I(F)_{T}\right|^{2}=E \int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} d s
$$

which allows us to extend the definition of the Itô integral to a larger class of integrands.

Let $T>0$ be a fixed but arbitrary number, and $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ be the vector space of all continuous, square-integrable martingales up to time $T$ on a probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ (where $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)$ is a filtration $\left.\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)\right)$ with initial value zero, endowed with the distance

$$
d(M, N)=\sqrt{E\left|M_{T}-N_{T}\right|^{2}} \quad \text { for } M, N \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2} .
$$

By definition, a sequence of square-integrable martingales $\left(M(k)_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ for $k=1,2, \cdots$ converges to $M$ in $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$, if and only if

$$
M(k)_{T} \rightarrow M_{T} \quad \text { in } \quad L^{2}(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)
$$

as $k \rightarrow \infty$. The following maximal inequality, which is the "martingale version" of Chebychev's inequality, allows us to show that $\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}, d\right)$ is complete.

Theorem 5.3.1 (Kolmogorov's inequality) Let $M \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$. Then for any $\lambda>0$

$$
P\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M_{t}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda^{2}} E\left(M_{T}^{2}\right)
$$

Proof. Since $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is continuous

$$
\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M_{t}\right|=\sup _{t \in D}\left|M_{t}\right|
$$

for any countable dense subset $D$ of $[0, T]$, and hence $\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M_{t}\right|$ is a random variable. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we may apply the discrete time martingale version of the Kolmogorov inequality to $\left\{M_{T k / 2^{n}} ; \mathcal{F}_{T k / 2^{n}}\right\}_{k \geq 0}$ to obtain

$$
P\left\{\sup _{0 \leq k \leq 2^{n}}\left|M_{T k / 2^{n}}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda^{2}} E\left(M_{T}^{2}\right)
$$

However, since $D=\left\{T k / 2^{n}: n, k \in \mathbb{N}\right\}$ is dense in $[0, T]$ we have that

$$
\sup _{0 \leq k \leq 2^{n}-1}\left|M_{T k / 2^{n}}\right| \uparrow \sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M_{t}\right|
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M_{t}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} & =\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} P\left\{\sup _{0 \leq k \leq 2^{n}-1}\left|M_{T k / 2^{n}}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \\
& \leq \frac{1}{\lambda^{2}} E\left(M_{T}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 5.3.2 $\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}, d\right)$ is a complete metric space.
Proof. Let $M(k) \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}(k=1,2, \cdots)$ be a Cauchy sequence in $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$. Then for the time $T$ we must have

$$
E\left|M(k)_{T}-M(l)_{T}\right|^{2} \rightarrow 0, \quad \text { as } k, l \rightarrow \infty
$$

As $L^{2}$ is complete there exists a limit random variable $M \in L^{2}$ such that

$$
\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} M(k)_{T}=M .
$$

From this we can define a martingale $M_{t}=E\left(M \mid \mathcal{F}_{t}\right)$. According to Kolmogorov's inequality

$$
P\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M(k)_{t}-M_{t}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda^{2}} E\left|M(k)_{T}-M_{T}\right|^{2}
$$

so that, $M(k)$ uniformly converges to the limit $M$ on $[0, T]$ in probability. Therefore we have for $M \equiv\left(M_{t}\right)$

$$
\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|M(k)_{t}-M_{t}\right| \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { in prob. }
$$

Obviously $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous and square -integrable martingale (up to time $T$ ) as the uniform limit of a sequence of continuous martingales.

### 5.3.2 Stochastic integrals as martingales

If $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a limit of simple processes in that

$$
E \int_{0}^{T}\left|F(n)_{t}-F_{t}\right|^{2} d t \rightarrow 0
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$ for a sequence of some simple processes $\{F(n): n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, then we say $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}$. The linearity of the Ito integral, together with Ito's isometry, imply that

$$
\begin{aligned}
d(I(F(n)), I(F(m))) & =E\left|I(F(n))_{T}-I(F(m))_{T}\right|^{2} \\
& =E \int_{0}^{T}\left|F(n)_{t}-F(m)_{t}\right|^{2} d t \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

as $n, m \rightarrow \infty$, i.e. $\left\{I(F(n)\}\right.$ is a Cauchy sequence in $\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}, d\right)$. Since $\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}, d\right)$ is complete, so that $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} I(F(n))$ exists in $\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}, d\right)$. We naturally define $I(F)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} I(F(n))$, which we call the Itô integral of $\left(F_{t}\right)$ against the Brownian motion $B$. We often write $I(F)_{t}$ as $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} d B_{s}$ or $F . B_{t}$.

Remark 5.3.3 1) A process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \leq T}$ in $\mathcal{L}^{2}$ is adapted to the Brownian filtration and

$$
E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t<\infty
$$

2) The map $F \rightarrow I(F)$ is a linear isometry from $\mathcal{L}^{2}$ to $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$, where $\mathcal{L}^{2}$ is endowed with the norm

$$
\|F\|=\sqrt{E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t}
$$

We note that $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ is a Hilbert space with norm $\|M\|=\sqrt{E\left(M_{T}^{2}\right)}$.
3) If $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}$, then $I(F)$ is a continuous, square-integrable martingale with initial value zero (up to time $T$ ), and $\langle I(F)\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s$.
$\mathcal{L}^{2}$ is a very big space which includes many interesting stochastic processes. For example

Lemma 5.3.4 Let $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be an adapted, left-continuous stochastic process, satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \int_{0}^{T} F_{s}^{2} d s<+\infty \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}$ and

$$
I(F)_{t}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l} F_{t_{l-1}}\left(B_{t_{l}}-B_{t_{l-1}}\right) \quad \text { in probability }
$$

where the limit is taken over all finite partitions of $[0, t]$.
Proof. For $n>0$, let

$$
D_{n} \equiv\left\{0=t_{0}^{n}<t_{1}^{n}<\cdots<t_{n_{k}}^{n}=T\right\}
$$

be a sequence of finite partitions of $[0, T]$ such that

$$
m\left(D_{n}\right)=\sup _{j}\left|t_{j}^{n}-t_{j-1}^{n}\right| \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(n)_{t}=F_{0} 1_{\{0\}}(t)+\sum_{l=1}^{n_{k}} F_{t_{l-1}^{n}} 1_{\left(t_{l-1}^{n}, t_{l}^{\eta}\right]}(t) ; \quad \text { for } t \geq 0 \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then each $F_{n}$ is simple, and, since $F$ is left-continuous $F(n)_{t} \rightarrow F_{t}$ for each $t$. Therefore

$$
E \int_{0}^{T}\left|F(n)_{s}-F_{s}\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \rightarrow 0 \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

By definition, $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}$.
Remark 5.3.5 The condition that $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is adapted to the filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ generated by the Brownian motion, i.e. each $F_{t}$ is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{F}_{t}$, is essential in the definition of Itô integrals. On the other hand, left-continuity of $t \rightarrow F_{t}$ is a technical one, which can be replaced by some sort of Borel measurability (e.g.; right-continuous, continuous, measurable
in $(t, \omega)$ etc.). Left-continuity becomes a crucial condition if one attempts to define stochastic integrals of $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ against martingales which may have jumps. The reason is that the left-limit of $F$ at time $t$ "happens" before time $t$, and if $t \rightarrow F_{t}$ is left-continuous, then, for any time $t$, the value $F_{t}$ can be "predicted" by the values taking place strictly before time $t$ :

$$
F_{t}=\lim _{s \uparrow t} F_{s} .
$$

Remark 5.3.6 We should point out that some kind of measurability of the random function $(t, \omega) \rightarrow F_{t}(\omega)$ is necessary in order to ensure (5.5) makes sense. Note that (5.5) may be written as

$$
\int_{\Omega} \int_{0}^{T} F_{s}(\omega)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s P(\mathrm{~d} \omega)<+\infty
$$

so the natural measurability condition should be that the function

$$
F(t, \omega) \equiv F_{t}(\omega)
$$

is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{B}([0, T]) \otimes \mathcal{F}_{T}$ for any $T>0$, where $\mathcal{B}([0, T])$ is the Borel $\sigma$-algebra generated by the open subsets in $[0, T]$, and $\mathcal{B}([0, T]) \otimes$ $\mathcal{F}_{T}$ is the product $\sigma$-algebra on $[0, T] \times \Omega$.

If $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous stochastic process adapted to $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}, f$ is a Borel function, and

$$
E \int_{0}^{T} f\left(X_{t}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} t<\infty
$$

then the stochastic process $\left(f\left(X_{t}\right)\right)_{t \geq 0}$ belongs to $\mathcal{L}^{2}$. In particular, for any Borel measurable function $f$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \int_{0}^{T} f\left(B_{t}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} t<\infty \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

then $\left(f\left(B_{t}\right)\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is in $\mathcal{L}^{2}$. What does condition (5.7) mean? A direct computation gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
E \int_{0}^{T} f\left(B_{t}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} t & =\int_{0}^{T} E f\left(B_{t}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} t \\
& =\int_{0}^{T} P_{t}\left(f^{2}\right)(0) \mathrm{d} t
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{t}\left(f^{2}\right)(0) & =\frac{1}{(2 \pi t)^{d / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(x)^{2} \mathrm{e}^{-|x|^{2} / 2 t} \mathrm{~d} x \\
& =\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{d / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} f(\sqrt{t} x)^{2} \mathrm{e}^{-|x|^{2} / 2} \mathrm{~d} x .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, if $f$ is a polynomial, then $f\left(B_{t}\right)$ is in $\mathcal{L}^{2}$, and for any constant $\alpha$ the process $\left(\mathrm{e}^{\alpha B_{t}}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ belongs to $\mathcal{L}^{2}$ as well. How about the stochastic process $F_{t}=\mathrm{e}^{\alpha B_{t}^{2}}$ ? In this case

$$
E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{d / 2}} \int_{0}^{T} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} \mathrm{e}^{2 \alpha t x^{2}} \mathrm{e}^{-|x|^{2} / 2} \mathrm{~d} x
$$

and therefore

$$
E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t<\infty \quad \text { if } \alpha \leq 0
$$

In the case $\alpha>0$, then

$$
E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t<\infty \quad \text { iff } \quad T<\frac{1}{4 \alpha} .
$$

### 5.3.3 Summary of main properties

If $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}_{2}$, then both

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s} \quad \text { and } \quad\left(\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}\right)^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
$$

are continuous martingales with initial value zero, and therefore $\langle F . B\rangle_{t}=$ $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s$. In general (by the use of the polarization identity $\left.x y=\frac{1}{4}\left((x+y)^{2}-(x-y)^{2}\right)\right)$

$$
\langle F . B, G . B\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} G_{s} \mathrm{~d} s \quad \forall F, G \in \mathcal{L}^{2} .
$$

In particular

$$
E\left[\int_{0}^{T} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}\right]^{2}=E\left(\int_{0}^{T} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right)
$$

and for any $t \geq s$,

$$
E\left\{\left(\int_{s}^{t} F_{u} \mathrm{~d} B_{u}\right)^{2} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right\}=E\left\{\int_{s}^{t} F_{u}^{2} \mathrm{~d} u \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right\} .
$$

### 5.4 Itô's integration for semi-martingales

We may apply the same procedure for defining Itô integrals against Brownian motion to define Itô integrals against any continuous, square-integrable martingale. Indeed, if $M \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ and $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a bounded, adapted, simple process, so that

$$
F_{t}=f 1_{\{0\}}(t)+\sum_{i} f_{i} 1_{\left(t_{i}, t_{i+1}\right]}(t)
$$

then we define the integral as

$$
I^{M}(F)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} f_{i} \cdot\left(M_{t \wedge t_{i+1}}-M_{t \wedge t_{i}}\right) .
$$

As before, we have

1. $I^{M}(F) \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$.
2. The bracket process $\left\langle I^{M}(F)\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}$, i.e. $I^{M}(F)_{t}^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}$ is a martingale.
3. (Itô's isometry) For any $T>0$, we have

$$
E\left(\int_{0}^{T} F_{t} \mathrm{~d} M_{t}\right)^{2}=E \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{t} .
$$

Let $T>0$ be a fixed time.
Definition 5.4.1 $A$ stochastic process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}^{2}(M)$, if there is a sequence $\{F(n)\}$ of simple stochastic processes $(F(n))$ such that

$$
E\left\{\int_{0}^{T} F(n)_{t}^{2} d\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\}<\infty
$$

and

$$
E\left\{\int_{0}^{T}\left|F(n)_{t}-F_{t}\right|^{2} d\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\} \rightarrow 0 \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty
$$

In other words, $\mathcal{L}^{2}(M)$ is the closure of all simple processes (up to time $T$ ) under the norm

$$
\|F\|=\sqrt{E\left\{\int_{0}^{T} F(n)_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\}}
$$

(this norm of course depends on the running time $T$ and the martingale $M \in$ $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ ), and thus $\mathcal{L}^{2}(M)$ is a Banach space. Indeed, the above norm is induced by a scalar product, so that $\mathcal{L}^{2}(M)$ is a Hilbert space. If $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}(M)$, and $\|F-F(n)\| \rightarrow 0$ for a sequence of simple processes, thanks to Ito's isometry

$$
E\left\{I^{M}(F)_{T}^{2}\right\}=\|F\|,
$$

it follows that

$$
I^{M}(F) \equiv \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} I^{M}\left(F_{n}\right), \quad \text { in } \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}
$$

exists. We use either $F . M$ or $\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}$ to denote $I^{M}(F)$. According to the definition, $I^{M}(F) \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ and $\left\langle I^{M}(F)\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}$. By the use of the polarization identity, if $M, N \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$ and $F \in \mathcal{L}^{2}(M), G \in \mathcal{L}^{2}(N)$, then

$$
\langle F . M, G . N\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} G_{s} \mathrm{~d}\langle M, N\rangle_{s}
$$

and $F .(G \cdot M)=(F G) \cdot M$, whenever these stochastic integrals make sense. That is

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left(\int_{0}^{s} G_{u} \mathrm{~d} M_{u}\right)_{s}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} G_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}
$$

Itô integration may be extended to local martingales in the following way. Suppose $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous, local martingale with initial value zero, then we may choose a sequence $\left\{T_{n}\right\}$ of stopping times such that $T_{n} \uparrow \infty$ a.s. and for each $n, M^{T_{n}}=\left(M_{t \wedge T_{n}}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous, squareintegrable martingale with initial value zero. In this case we may define

$$
\langle M\rangle_{t}=\left\langle M^{T_{n}}\right\rangle_{t} \quad \text { if } \quad t \leq T_{n}
$$

which is an adapted, continuous, increasing process with initial value zero such that

$$
M_{t}^{2}-\langle M\rangle_{t}
$$

is a local martingale.
Let $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a left-continuous, adapted process such that for each $T>0$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}<\infty \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and define

$$
S_{n}=\inf \left\{t \geq 0: \int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s} \geq n\right\} \wedge n
$$

which is a sequence of stopping times. Condition (5.8) ensures that $S_{n} \uparrow \infty$. Let $\tilde{T}_{n}=T_{n} \wedge S_{n}$. Then $\tilde{T}_{n} \uparrow \infty$ almost surely, and for each $n, M^{\tilde{T}_{n}} \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2}$. Let

$$
F(n)_{t}=F_{t} 1_{\left\{t \leq \tilde{T}_{n}\right\}} .
$$

Then

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} F(n)_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}=\int_{0}^{\tilde{T}_{n}} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s} \leq n
$$

so that $F(n) \in \mathcal{L}_{2}\left(M^{\tilde{T}_{n}}\right)$. We may define

$$
(F . M)_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} F(n)_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left(M^{\tilde{T}_{n}}\right)_{s} \quad \text { if } t \leq \tilde{T}_{n} \uparrow \infty
$$

for $n=1,2,3, \cdots$, which we call the Itô integral of $F$ with respect to the local martingale $M$. It can be shown that $F . M$ does not depend on the choice of stopping times $T_{n}$. By definition, both F.M and

$$
(F . M)_{t}^{2}-\int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}
$$

are continuous, local martingales with initial value zero.
Finally let us extend the theory of stochastic integrals to the most useful class of (continuous) semimartingales. An adapted, continuous stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a semimartingale if $X$ possesses a decomposition

$$
X_{t}=M_{t}+V_{t}
$$

where $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous local martingale, and $\left(V_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is stochastic processes with finite variation on any finite time interval.

If $f(t)$ is a function on $[0, T]$ with finite variation:

$$
\sup _{D} \sum_{l}\left|f\left(t_{l}\right)-f\left(t_{l-1}\right)\right|<+\infty
$$

where $D$ runs over all finite partitions of $[0, t]$ (for any fixed $t$ ), then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} g(s) \mathrm{d} f(s)
$$

is understood as the Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral. If in addition $s \rightarrow f(s)$ is continuous, then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} g(s) \mathrm{d} f(s)=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l} g\left(t_{l-1}\right)\left(f\left(t_{l}\right)-f\left(t_{l-1}\right)\right)
$$

Therefore, if $V=\left(V_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous stochastic process with finite variation, then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} V_{s}
$$

is a stochastic process defined pathwise by the Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} V_{s}(\omega) & \equiv \int_{0}^{t} F_{s}(\omega) \mathrm{d} V_{s}(\omega) \\
& =\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l} F_{t_{l-1}}(\omega)\left(V_{t_{l}}(\omega)-V_{t_{l-1}}(\omega)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The definition of the stochastic integral may be extended to any continuous semi-martingale in an obvious way, namely

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} X_{s}=\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} V_{s}
$$

where the first term on the right-hand side is the Itô integral with respect to the local martingale $M$ defined in the probabilistic sense, which is again a local martingale, the second term is the usual Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral which is defined pathwise. Moreover

$$
\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} X_{s}=\lim _{m(D) \rightarrow 0} \sum_{l} F_{t_{l-1}}\left(X_{t_{l}}-X_{t_{l-1}}\right) \quad \text { in probability. }
$$

### 5.5 Ito's formula

Ito's formula was established by Itô in 1944. Since Itô stated it as a lemma in his seminal paper, Itô's formula is also refereed to in the literature as Itô's Lemma. Itô's Lemma is indeed the Fundamental Theorem in stochastic calculus.

We have used on many occasions the following elementary formula

$$
X_{t_{j}}^{2}-X_{t_{j-1}}^{2}=\left(X_{t_{j}}-X_{t_{j-1}}\right)^{2}+2 X_{t_{j-1}}\left(X_{t_{j}}-X_{t_{j-1}}\right)
$$

If in addition $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous square-integrable martingale, then, by adding up the above identity over $j=1, \cdots, n$, where $0=t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<$ $t_{n}=t$ is an arbitrary finite partition of the time interval $[0, t]$, one obtains

$$
X_{t}^{2}-X_{0}^{2}=2 \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{t_{j-1}}\left(X_{t_{j}}-X_{t_{j-1}}\right)+\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(X_{t_{j}}-X_{t_{j-1}}\right)^{2} .
$$

Letting $m(D) \rightarrow 0$, we obtain

$$
X_{t}^{2}-X_{0}^{2}=2 \int_{0}^{t} X_{s} d X_{s}+\langle X\rangle_{t}
$$

which is the Itô formula for the martingale $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ applied to $f(x)=x^{2}$. By using polarization and localization, we can establish the following integration by parts formula.

Corollary 5.5.1 (Integration by parts) Let $X=M+A$ and $Y=N+$ $B$ be continuous semimartingales. That is $M$ and $N$ are continuous local martingales, and $A, B$ are continuous, adapted processes of finite variation. Then

$$
X_{t} Y_{t}-X_{0} Y_{0}=\int_{0}^{t} X_{s} d Y_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} Y_{s} d X_{s}+\langle M, N\rangle_{t}
$$

The following is the fundamental theorem in stochastic calculus.
Theorem 5.5.2 (Itô's formula) Let $X=\left(X_{t}^{1}, \cdots, X_{t}^{d}\right)$ be a continuous semi-martingale in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ with decomposition $X_{t}^{i}=M_{t}^{i}+A_{t}^{i}$, where $M_{t}^{1}, \cdots, M_{t}^{d}$ are continuous local martingales, and $A_{t}^{1}, \cdots, A_{t}^{d}$ are continuous, locally integrable, adapted processes of finite variation. Let $f \in C^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}, \mathbb{R}\right)$. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)= & \sum_{i=1}^{d} \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}\left(X_{s}\right) d X_{s}^{i} \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i, j=1}^{d} \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x_{i} \partial x_{j}}\left(X_{s}\right) d\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{s} \tag{5.9}
\end{align*}
$$

The first term on the right-hand side of (5.9) can be decomposed into

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{d} \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}\left(X_{s}\right) d M_{s}^{j}+\sum_{j=1}^{d} \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}\left(X_{s}\right) d A_{s}^{j}
$$

so that $f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)$ is again a semi-martingale with its martingale part given by

$$
M_{t}^{f}=\sum_{j=1}^{d} \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}\left(X_{s}\right) d M_{s}^{j}
$$

It follows that

$$
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \sum_{i, j=1}^{d} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}\left(X_{s}\right) \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_{j}}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d}\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{s} .
$$

### 5.5.1 Itô's formula for BM

If $B=\left(B_{t}^{1}, \cdots, B_{t}^{d}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, then, for $f \in C^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}, \mathbb{R}\right)$

$$
f\left(B_{t}\right)-f\left(B_{0}\right)=\int_{0}^{t} \nabla f\left(B_{s}\right) \cdot \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{2} \Delta f\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
$$

Let

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(B_{t}\right)-f\left(B_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{2} \Delta f\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
$$

Then $M^{f}$ is a local martingale and

$$
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t}\langle\nabla f, \nabla g\rangle\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

### 5.5.2 Proof of Itô's formula.

Let us prove Itô's formula in the one-dimensional case. By using the localization technique, we only need to prove it for a continuous, square-integrable martingale $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. Thus we need to show

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(M_{t}\right)-f\left(M_{0}\right)=\int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime}\left(M_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} M_{s}+\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime \prime}\left(M_{s}\right) \mathrm{d}\langle M\rangle_{s} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The formula is true for $f(x)=x^{2}\left(f^{\prime}(x)=2 x\right.$ and $\left.f^{\prime \prime}(x)=2\right)$ as we have already seen that

$$
M_{t}^{2}-M_{0}^{2}=2 \int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\langle M\rangle_{t} .
$$

Suppose (5.10) is true for $f(x)=x^{n}$, that is

$$
M_{t}^{n}-M_{0}^{n}=n \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n-1} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\frac{n(n-1)}{2} \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n-2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s} .
$$

By applying the integration by parts formula to $M^{n}$ and $M$, one obtains

$$
\begin{aligned}
M_{t}^{n+1}-M_{0}^{n+1}= & \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}^{n}+\left\langle M, M^{n}\right\rangle_{t} \\
= & \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} M_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left\{n M_{s}^{n-1} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\frac{n(n-1)}{2} M_{s}^{n-2} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}\right\} \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} n M_{s}^{n-1} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s} \\
= & (n+1) \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\frac{(n+1) n}{2} \int_{0}^{t} M_{s}^{n-1} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies that (5.10) holds for power functions $x^{n+1}$. By linearity Itô's formula holds for any polynomial. Now we can use Taylor expansions to show that it must hold for any $C^{2}$ function $f$.

### 5.6 Selected applications of Itô's formula

In this section, we present several applications of Itô's formula.

### 5.6.1 Lévy's characterization of Brownian motion

Our first application is Lévy's martingale characterization of Brownian motion. Let $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}, P)$ be a filtered probability space satisfying the usual condition.

Theorem 5.6.1 Let $M_{t}=\left(M_{t}^{1}, \cdots, M_{t}^{d}\right)$ be an adapted, continuous stochastic process on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ taking values in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ with initial value zero. Then $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion if and only if

1. Each $M_{t}^{i}$ is a continuous square-integrable martingale.
2. $M_{t}^{i} M_{t}^{j}-\delta_{i j} t$ is a martingale, that is, $\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{t}=\delta_{i j} t$ for every pair $(i, j)$.

Proof. We have already established the martingale properties of BM in Proposition 4.1.17, hence we only need to prove the sufficiency of the conditions. Recall that by Theorem 4.1.18, under the assumption of adaptedness and continuity, $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(e^{\sqrt{-1}\left\langle\xi, M_{t}-M_{s}\right\rangle} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right)=\exp \left\{-\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2}(t-s)\right\} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $t>s$ and $\xi=\left(\xi_{i}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$. We thus consider the adapted process

$$
Z_{t}=\exp \left(\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} M_{t}^{i}+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} t\right)
$$

and we show it is a martingale. To this end, we apply Itô's formula to $f(x)=e^{x}$ (in this case $f^{\prime}=f^{\prime \prime}=f$ ) and semi-martingale

$$
X_{t}=\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} M_{t}^{i}+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} t
$$

and obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_{t}= & Z_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left(\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} M_{s}^{i}+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} s\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left\langle\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} M^{i}\right\rangle_{s} \\
= & 1+\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}^{i}+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} s \\
& -\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} \sum_{i, j=1}^{d} \xi_{i} \xi_{j} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{s} \\
= & 1+\sqrt{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{d} \xi_{i} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}^{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

the last equality follows from

$$
\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} \sum_{i, j=1}^{d} \xi_{i} \xi_{j} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{s}=\frac{1}{2}|\xi|^{2} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} s
$$

due to the assumption that $\left\langle M^{i}, M^{j}\right\rangle_{s}=\delta_{i j} s$. Since $\left|Z_{s}\right|=e^{|\xi|^{2} s / 2}$, so that for any $T>0$

$$
E \int_{0}^{T}\left|Z_{s}\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s=\int_{0}^{T} e^{|\xi|^{2} s} \mathrm{~d} s<\infty
$$

and therefore $\left(Z_{t}\right) \in \mathcal{L}^{2}\left(M^{i}\right)$ for $i=1, \cdots, d$ as $\left\langle M^{i}\right\rangle_{t}=t$. It follows that

$$
\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}^{i} \in \mathcal{M}_{0}^{2} .
$$

That is, $Z_{s}$ is a continuous, square-integrable martingale with initial value 1. The equality (5.11) follows from the martingale property

$$
E\left(\left.e^{i\left\langle\xi, M_{t}\right\rangle+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} t} \right\rvert\, \mathcal{F}_{s}\right)=e^{i\left\langle\xi, M_{s}\right\rangle+\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{2} s}
$$

for $t>s$.

### 5.6.2 Time-changes of Brownian motion

Theorem 5.6.2 (Dambis, Dubins and Schwarz) Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous, local martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ with initial value zero satisfying $\langle M\rangle_{\infty}=\infty$, and let

$$
T_{t}=\inf \left\{s:\langle M\rangle_{s}>t\right\}
$$

Then $T_{t}$ is a stopping time for each $t \geq 0, B_{t}=M_{T_{t}}$ is an $\left(\mathcal{F}_{T_{t}}\right)$-Brownian motion, and $M_{t}=B_{\langle M\rangle_{t}}$.

Proof. The family $T=\left(T_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is called a time-change, because each $T_{t}$ is a stopping time (exercise), and obviously $t \rightarrow T_{t}$ is increasing (another exercise). Each $T_{t}$ is finite $\mathbb{P}$-a.e. because $\langle M\rangle_{\infty}=\infty P$-a.e. (exercise). By continuity of $\langle M\rangle_{t}$

$$
\langle M\rangle_{T_{t}}=t \quad P \text {-a.s. }
$$

Applying Doob's optional stopping theorem to the square integrable martingale $\left(M_{s \wedge T_{t}}\right)_{s \geq 0}$ and stopping times $T_{t} \geq T_{s}(t \geq s)$, we obtain that

$$
E\left(M_{T_{t}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{T_{s}}\right)=M_{T_{s}}
$$

That is $B_{t}=M_{T_{t}}$ is an $\left(\mathcal{F}_{T_{t}}\right)$-local martingale. By the same argument but applied to the martingale $\left(M_{s \wedge T_{t}}^{2}-\langle M\rangle_{s \wedge T_{t}}\right)_{s \geq 0}$ we have

$$
E\left(M_{T_{t}}^{2}-\langle M\rangle_{T_{t}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{T_{s}}\right)=M_{T_{s}}^{2}-\langle M\rangle_{T_{s}} .
$$

Hence $\left(B_{t}^{2}-t\right)$ is an $\left(\mathcal{F}_{T_{t}}\right)$-local martingale. We can prove that $t \rightarrow B_{t}$ is continuous (exercise), so that $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is an $\left(\mathcal{F}_{T_{t}}\right)$ Brownian motion.

### 5.6.3 Stochastic exponentials

In this section we consider a simple stochastic differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
d Z_{t}=Z_{t} d X_{t}, \quad Z_{0}=1 \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $X_{t}=M_{t}+A_{t}$ is a continuous semi-martingale. The solution of ( $5.12)$ is called the stochastic exponential of $X$. The equation (5.12) should be understood as an integral equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z_{t}=1+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} d X_{s} \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the integral is taken as the Itô integral. To find the solution to (5.13) we can look for solutions of the form

$$
Z_{t}=\exp \left(X_{t}+V_{t}\right)
$$

where $\left(V_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, to be determined, is a "correction" term (which has finite variation) due to Itô integration. Applying Itô's formula we obtain

$$
Z_{t}=1+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\left(X_{s}+V_{s}\right)+\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{s}
$$

and therefore, in order to match the equation (5.13) we must choose $V_{t}=$ $-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}$.

Lemma 5.6.3 Let $X_{t}=M_{t}+A_{t}$ (where $M$ is a continuous local martingale, $A$ is an adapted continuous process with finite total variation) with $X_{0}=0$. Then

$$
\mathcal{E}(X)_{t}=\exp \left(X_{t}-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right)
$$

is the solution to (5.13).

$$
\mathcal{E}(X) \text { is called the stochastic exponential of } X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \text {. }
$$

Proposition 5.6.4 Let $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous local martingale with $M_{0}=$ 0 . Then the stochastic exponential $\mathcal{E}(M)$ is a continuous, non-negative local martingale.

Remark 5.6.5 According to the definition of the Itô integral, if $T>0$ is such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \int_{0}^{T} e^{2 M_{t}-\langle M\rangle_{t}} \mathrm{~d}\langle M\rangle_{t}<\infty \tag{5.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

then the stochastic exponential

$$
\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}=\exp \left(M_{t}-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right)
$$

is a non-negative, continuous martingale.
Even if $\mathcal{E}(M)$ fails to be a martingale, it is nevertheless a super-martingale.

Lemma 5.6.6 Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a non-negative, continuous local martingale. Then $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a super-martingale: $E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right) \leq X_{s}$ for any $t<s$. In particular $t \rightarrow E X_{t}$ is decreasing, and therefore $E X_{t} \leq E X_{0}$ for any $t>0$.

Proof. Recall Fatou's lemma: if $\left\{f_{n}\right\}$ is a sequence of non-negative, integrable functions on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, such that

$$
\varliminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(f_{n}\right)<+\infty
$$

then $\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_{n}$ is integrable and

$$
E\left(\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_{n} \mid \mathcal{G}\right) \leq \varliminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(f_{n} \mid \mathcal{G}\right)
$$

for any sub $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{G}$ (see page 88, D. Williams: Probability with Martingales).

By definition, there is a sequence of finite stopping times $T_{n} \uparrow+\infty P$-a.e. such that $X^{T_{n}}=\left(X_{t \wedge T_{n}}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale for each $n$. Hence

$$
E\left(X_{t \wedge T_{n}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right)=X_{s \wedge T_{n}}, \quad \forall t \geq s, n=1,2, \cdots
$$

In particular

$$
E\left(X_{t \wedge T_{n}}\right)=E X_{0}
$$

so that, by Fatou's lemma, $X_{t}=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{t \wedge T_{n}}$ is integrable. Applying Fatou's lemma to $X_{t \wedge T_{n}}$ and $\mathcal{G}=\mathcal{F}_{s}$ for $t>s$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(X_{t} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right) & =E\left(\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{t \wedge T_{n}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right) \\
& \leq \underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(X_{t \wedge T_{n}} \mid \mathcal{F}_{s}\right) \\
& =\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} X_{s \wedge T_{n}} \\
& =X_{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we have shown that $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a super-martingale.
Corollary 5.6.7 Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous local martingale with $M_{0}=0$. Then $\mathcal{E}(M)$ is a super-martingale. In particular,

$$
E \exp \left(M_{t}-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right) \leq 1 \quad \text { for all } \quad t \geq 0
$$

Clearly, a continuous super-martingale $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a martingale if and only if its expectation $t \rightarrow E\left(X_{t}\right)$ is constant. Therefore

Corollary 5.6.8 Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous local martingale with $M_{0}=0$. Then $\mathcal{E}(M)$ is a martingale up to time $T$, if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \exp \left(M_{T}-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)=1 \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Stochastic exponentials of local martingales play an important rôle in probability transformations. It is vital in many applications to know whether the stochastic exponential of a given martingale $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is indeed a martingale. A simple sufficient condition to ensure (5.15) is the so-called Novikov condition stated in Theorem 5.6.9 below (A. A. Novikov: On moment inequalities and identities for stochastic integrals, Proc. second JapanUSSR Symp. Prob. Theor., Lecture Notes in Math., 330, 333-339, SpringerVerlag, Berlin 1973).

Theorem 5.6.9 (A. A. Novikov) Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous local martingale with $M_{0}=0$. If

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \exp \left(\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)<\infty, \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

then $\mathcal{E}(M)$ is a martingale up to time $T$.

Proof. The following proof is due to J. A. Yan: Critères d'intégrabilité uniforme des martingales exponentielles, Acta. Math. Sinica 23, 311-318 (1980). The idea is the following, first show that, under the Novikov condition (5.16), for any $0<\alpha<1$

$$
\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t} \equiv \exp \left(\alpha M_{t}-\frac{1}{2} \alpha^{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right)
$$

is a uniformly integrable martingale up to time $T$. For any $\alpha, \mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t}$ is the stochastic exponential of the local martingale $\alpha M_{t}$, so that $\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)$ is a non-negative, continuous local martingale, $E\left(\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t}\right) \leq 1$. We also have the following scaling property

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t} & \equiv \exp \left\{\alpha\left(M_{t}-\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t}\right)-\frac{1}{2} \alpha(\alpha-1)\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\} \\
& =\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}\right)^{\alpha} \exp \left\{\frac{1}{2} \alpha(1-\alpha)\langle M\rangle_{t}\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For any finite stopping time $S \leq T$ and for any $A \in \mathcal{F}_{T}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left(1_{A} \mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{S}\right)=E\left\{1_{A}\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{S}\right)^{\alpha} \exp \left[\frac{1}{2} \alpha(1-\alpha)\langle M\rangle_{S}\right]\right\} \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Hölder's inequality with $\frac{1}{\alpha}>1$ and $\frac{1}{1-\alpha}$ in (5.17) one obtains

$$
\begin{align*}
E\left\{1_{A} \mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{S}\right\} & =E\left\{\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{S}\right)^{\alpha} \exp \left[\frac{1}{2} \alpha(1-\alpha)\langle M\rangle_{S}\right]\right\} \\
& \leq\left\{E\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{S}\right)\right\}^{\alpha}\left\{E\left[1_{A} \exp \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\langle M\rangle_{S}\right)\right]\right\}^{1-\alpha} \\
& \leq\left\{E\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{T}\right)\right\}^{\alpha}\left\{E\left[1_{A} \exp \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)\right]\right\}^{1-\alpha} \\
& \leq\left\{E\left[1_{A} \exp \left(\frac{1}{2} \alpha\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)\right]\right\}^{1-\alpha} \\
& \leq E\left\{1_{A} \exp \left(\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)\right\} \tag{5.18}
\end{align*}
$$

This gives a uniform bound showing that

$$
\left\{\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{S}: \text { any stopping times } S \leq T\right\}
$$

is a uniformly integrable family of random variables. As a consequence $\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)$ must be a martingale on $[0, T]$. Therefore

$$
E\left(\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{T}\right)=E\left(\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{0}\right)=1, \quad \forall \alpha \in(0,1)
$$

Set $A=\Omega$ and $S=t \leq T$ in (5.18), the first inequality of (5.18) becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 & =E\left(\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t}\right) \\
& \leq\left(E\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}\right)\right)^{\alpha}\left\{E\left(\exp \left(\frac{1}{2}\langle M\rangle_{T}\right)\right)\right\}^{1-\alpha}
\end{aligned}
$$

for every $\alpha \in(0,1)$. Letting $\alpha \uparrow 1$ we thus obtain

$$
E\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}\right) \geq 1
$$

so that $E\left(\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}\right)=1$ for any $t \leq T$. It follows that $\mathcal{E}(M)_{t}$ is a martingale up to $T$.

Consider a standard Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, and a process $F=$ $\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}_{2}$. If

$$
E \exp \left[\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t\right]<\infty
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{t}=\exp \left\{\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}-\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} F_{s}^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right\} \tag{5.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a positive martingale on $[0, T]$. For example, for any bounded process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}_{2}:\left|F_{t}(\omega)\right| \leq C$ (for all $t \leq T$ and $\omega \in \Omega$ ), where $C$ is a constant, then

$$
E\left\{\exp \left(\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{T} F_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t\right)\right\} \leq \exp \left(\frac{1}{2} C^{2} T\right)<\infty
$$

so that, in this case, $X=\left(X_{t}\right)$ defined by (5.19) is a martingale up to time $T$.

Novikov's condition is very nice, it is however not easy to verify in many interesting cases. For example, consider the stochastic exponential of the martingale $\int_{0}^{t} B_{s} \mathrm{~d} B_{s}$, the Novikov condition requires us to estimate the integral

$$
E\left\{\exp \left[\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{T} B_{t}^{2} \mathrm{~d} t\right]\right\}
$$

which is already not an easy task.
An alternative condition for the stochastic exponential of a local martingale to be a martingale is provided by Kazamaki's criterion.

Theorem 5.6.10 If $M$ is a local martingale such that $\exp (M / 2)$ is a uniformly integrable sub-martingale, then $\mathcal{E}(M)$ is a uniformly integrable martingale.

### 5.6.4 Exponential inequality

We are going to present three significant applications of stochastic exponentials: a sharp improvement of Doob's maximal inequality for martingales, Girsanov's theorem, and the martingale representation theorem. In this section we improve the maximal inequality.

Recall that, according to Doob's maximal inequality, if $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous super-martingale on $[0, T]$, then for any $\lambda>0$

$$
P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left|X_{t}\right| \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda}\left(E\left(X_{0}\right)+2 E\left(X_{T}^{-}\right)\right)
$$

where $x^{-}=-x$ if $x<0$ and $=0$ if $x \geq 0$. In particular, if $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a non-negative, continuous super-martingale on $[0, T]$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]} X_{t} \geq \lambda\right\} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda} E\left(X_{0}\right) \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

This inequality has a significant improvement stated as follows.

Theorem 5.6.11 Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous square-integrable martingale with $M_{0}=0$. Suppose there is a (deterministic) continuous, increasing function $a=a(t)$ such that $a(0)=0,\langle M\rangle_{t} \leq a(t)$ for all $t \in[0, T]$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]} M_{t} \geq \lambda a(T)\right\} \leq e^{-\frac{\lambda^{2}}{2} a(T)} \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. For every $\alpha>0$ and $t \leq T$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha M_{t}-\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2}\langle M\rangle_{t} & \geq \alpha M_{t}-\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2}\langle M\rangle_{T} \\
& \geq \alpha M_{t}-\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2} a(T)
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t} \geq e^{\alpha M_{t}-\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2} a(T)} \quad \text { for } \alpha>0
$$

Hence, by applying Doob's maximal inequality to the non-negative supermartingale $\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)$ we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]} M_{t} \geq \lambda a(T)\right\} & \leq P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]} \mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{t} \geq e^{\alpha \lambda a(T)-\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2} a(T)}\right\} \\
& \leq e^{-\alpha \lambda a(T)+\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2} a(T)} E\left\{\mathcal{E}(\alpha M)_{0}\right\} \\
& =e^{-\alpha \lambda a(T)+\frac{\alpha^{2}}{2} a(T)}
\end{aligned}
$$

for any $\alpha>0$. The exponential inequality follows by setting $\alpha=\lambda$.
In particular, by applying the exponential inequality to a standard Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left\{\sup _{t \in[0, T]} B_{t} \geq \lambda T\right\} \leq e^{-\frac{\lambda^{2}}{2} T} \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

By comparing with the exact distribution we can see that this estimate has the correct exponential behaviour.

### 5.6.5 Girsanov's theorem

Assume we are given a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$. Let $T>0$, and $Q$ be a probability measure on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}\right)$ such that

$$
\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{T}}=\xi
$$

for some non-negative random variable $\xi \in L^{1}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$. By definition, for any bounded $\mathcal{F}_{T}$-measurable random variable $X$

$$
\int_{\Omega} X(\omega) Q(d \omega)=\int_{\Omega} X(\omega) \xi(\omega) P(d \omega)
$$

which can also be written as

$$
E^{Q}(X)=E^{P}(\xi X)
$$

If, however, $X$ is $\mathcal{F}_{t}$-measurable, $t \leq T$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
E^{Q}(X) & =E^{P}\left(E^{P}\left(\xi X \mid \mathcal{F}_{t}\right)\right) \\
& =E^{P}\left(E^{P}\left(\xi \mid \mathcal{F}_{t}\right) X\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

That is, for every $t \leq T$

$$
\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=E^{P}\left(\xi \mid \mathcal{F}_{t}\right)
$$

which is a non-negative martingale up to $T$ under the probability measure $P$.

Conversely, if $T>0$ and $Z=\left(Z_{t}\right)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$ is a continuous, positive martingale up to time $T$, with $Z_{0}=1$, on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$. We define a measure $Q$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}\right)$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q(A)=E^{P}\left(Z_{T} I_{A}\right) \quad \text { if } A \in \mathcal{F}_{T} \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

That is, $\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{T}}=Z_{T} . Q$ is a probability measure on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}\right)$ as $E\left(Z_{T}\right)=1$. Since $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \leq T}$ is a martingale up to time $T$, so that $\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F} t}=Z_{t}$ for all $t \leq T$.

If $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a positive martingale with $Z_{0}=1$, then there is a probability measure $Q$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{\infty}\right)$, where $\mathcal{F}_{\infty} \equiv \sigma\left\{\mathcal{F}_{t}: t \geq 0\right\}$, such that $\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=Z_{t}$ for all $t \geq 0$.

We are now in a position to prove Girsanov's theorem.
Theorem 5.6.12 (Girsanov's theorem) Let $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a continuous local martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ up to time $T$. Then

$$
X_{t}=M_{t}-\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{Z_{s}} d\langle M, Z\rangle_{s}
$$

is a continuous local martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, Q\right)$ up to time $T$.

Proof. Using the localization technique, we may assume that $M, Z, 1 / Z$ are all bounded. In this case $M$ and $Z$ are bounded martingales. We want to prove that $X$ is a martingale under the probability $Q$ :

$$
E^{Q}\left\{X_{t} \mid F_{s}\right\}=X_{s} \quad \text { for all } s<t \leq T
$$

that is

$$
E^{Q}\left\{1_{A}\left(X_{t}-X_{s}\right)\right\}=0 \quad \text { for all } s<t \leq T, A \in \mathcal{F}_{s}
$$

By definition

$$
E^{Q}\left\{1_{A}\left(X_{t}-X_{s}\right)\right\}=E^{P}\left\{\left(Z_{t} X_{t}-Z_{s} X_{s}\right) 1_{A}\right\}
$$

thus we only need to show that $\left(Z_{t} X_{t}\right)$ is a martingale up to time $T$ under the probability measure $P$. By use of the integration by parts formula of Corollary 5.5.1, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_{t} X_{t}= & Z_{0} X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} X_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} X_{s} \mathrm{~d} Z_{s}+\langle Z, X\rangle_{t} \\
= & Z_{0} X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s}\left(\mathrm{~d} M_{s}-\frac{1}{Z_{s}} \mathrm{~d}\langle M, Z\rangle_{s}\right) \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} X_{s} \mathrm{~d} Z_{s}+\langle Z, X\rangle_{t} \\
= & Z_{0} X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} X_{s} \mathrm{~d} Z_{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

which is a local martingale as $M$ and $Z$ are $P$-martingales.
Since $Z_{t}>0$ is a positive martingale up to time $T$, we may apply the Itô formula to $\log Z_{t}$, to obtain

$$
\log Z_{t}-\log Z_{0}=\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{Z_{s}} \mathrm{~d} Z_{s}-\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{Z_{s}^{2}} \mathrm{~d}\langle Z\rangle_{s}
$$

that is, $Z_{t}=\mathcal{E}(N)_{t}$ with

$$
N_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{Z_{s}} \mathrm{~d} Z_{s}
$$

is a continuous local martingale. Hence $Z_{t}=\mathcal{E}(N)_{t}$ solves the Itô integral equation

$$
Z_{t}=1+\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} N_{s}
$$

and therefore

$$
\langle M, Z\rangle_{t}=\left\langle\int_{0}^{t} \mathrm{~d} M_{s}, \int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d} N_{s}\right\rangle=\int_{0}^{t} Z_{s} \mathrm{~d}\langle N, M\rangle_{s}
$$

It follows from this that

$$
\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{Z_{s}} \mathrm{~d}\langle M, Z\rangle_{s}=\langle N, M\rangle_{t} .
$$

Corollary 5.6.13 Let $N_{t}$ be a continuous local martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$, $N_{0}=0$, such that its stochastic exponential $\mathcal{E}(N)_{t}$ is a continuous martingale up to time $T$. Define a probability measure $Q$ on the measurable space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}\right)$ by

$$
\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=\mathcal{E}(N)_{t} \quad \text { for all } t \leq T
$$

If $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a continuous local martingale under the probability $P$, then

$$
X_{t}=M_{t}-\langle N, M\rangle_{t}
$$

is a continuous, local martingale under $Q$ up to time T. (You should carefully define the concept of a local martingale up to time $T$ ).

In the next chapter we will give a version of this result for Brownian motion.

### 5.7 The martingale representation theorem

The martingale representation theorem is a deep result about Brownian motion. There is a natural version for multi-dimensional Brownian motion, however, for simplicity, here we concentrate on one-dimensional Brownian motion.

Let $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}$ on a complete probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, and $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ (together with $\left.\mathcal{F}_{\infty}^{0}=\cup \mathcal{F}_{t}^{0}\right)$ be the filtration generated by the Brownian motion $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. Let $\mathcal{F}_{t}$ be the completion, and $\mathcal{F}_{\infty}=\cup \mathcal{F}_{t}$. Note that $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is continuous.

Theorem 5.7.1 Let $M=\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a square-integrable martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$. Then there is a stochastic process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ in $\mathcal{L}_{2}$, such that

$$
M_{t}=E\left(M_{0}\right)+\int_{0}^{t} F_{s} d B_{s} \quad \text { a.s. }
$$

for any $t \geq 0$. In particular, any martingale with respect to the Brownian filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ has a continuous version.

The proof of this theorem relies on two lemmas. Let $T>0$ be any fixed time.

Lemma 5.7.2 The following collection of random variables on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$

$$
\left\{\phi\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{k}}\right): \forall k \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}, \quad t_{j} \in[0, T] \text { and } \phi \in C_{0}^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{k}\right)\right\}
$$

is dense in $L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$.
Proof. If $X \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$, then, by definition, there is an $\mathcal{F}_{T^{-}}^{0}$ measurable function (where by definition, $\mathcal{F}_{T}^{0}=\sigma\left\{B_{t}: t \leq T\right\}$ ) which equals $X$ almost surely. Therefore, without loss of generality, we may assume that $X \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}^{0}, P\right)$. Let $D=\mathbb{Q} \cap[0, T]$ be the set of all rational numbers in the interval $[0, T]$. Since $D$ is dense in $[0, T]$, we have that $\mathcal{F}_{T}^{0}=\sigma\left\{B_{t}: t \in D\right\}$. Moreover $D$ is countable, so that we may write $D=\left\{t_{1}, \cdots, t_{n}, \cdots\right\}$. Let $D_{n}=\left\{t_{1}, \cdots, t_{n}\right\}$ for each $n$, and $\mathcal{G}_{n}=\sigma\left\{B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right\}$. Then $\left\{\mathcal{G}_{n}\right\}$ is increasing, and $\mathcal{G}_{n} \uparrow \mathcal{F}_{T}^{0}$. Let $X_{n}=E\left(X \mid \mathcal{G}_{n}\right)$. Then $\left(X_{n}\right)_{n \geq 1}$ is a squareintegrable martingale, and by the martingale convergence theorem we have

$$
X_{n} \rightarrow X \quad \text { almost surely. }
$$

Moreover $X_{n} \rightarrow X$ in $L^{2}$. While, for each $n, X_{n}$ is measurable with respect to $\mathcal{G}_{n}$, so that

$$
X_{n}=f_{n}\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right)
$$

for some Borel measurable function $f_{n}: \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Since $X_{n} \in L^{2}$, we have that $f_{n} \in L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}, \mu\right)$ where $\mu$ is a Gaussian measure such that

$$
E X_{n}^{2}=\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} f_{n}(x)^{2} \mu(d x) .
$$

Since $C_{0}^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ is dense in $L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}, \mu\right)$, for each $n$, there is a sequence $\left\{\phi_{n k}\right\}$ in $C_{0}^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ such that $\phi_{n k} \rightarrow f_{n}$ in $L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}, \mu\right)$. It follows that

$$
\phi_{n n}\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right) \rightarrow X
$$

in $L^{2}$.
If $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ is an interval, then we use $L^{2}(I)$ to denote the Hilbert space of all functions $h$ on $I$ which are square-integrable.

Lemma 5.7.3 Let $T>0$. For any $h \in L^{2}([0, T])$, we define an associated exponential martingale up to time $T$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
M(h)_{t}=\exp \left\{\int_{0}^{t} h(s) d B_{s}-\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} h(s)^{2} d s\right\} ; \quad t \in[0, T] . \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\mathbb{L}=\operatorname{span}\left\{M(h)_{T}: h \in L^{2}([0, T])\right\}$ is dense in $L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$.
Proof. The conclusion will follow if we can prove the following: if $H \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$ such that

$$
\int_{\Omega} H \Phi \mathrm{~d} P=0 \quad \text { for all } \Phi \in \mathbb{L}
$$

then $H=0$.
For any $0=t_{0}<t_{1}<\cdots<t_{n}=T$ and $c_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$, consider a step function $h(t)=c_{i}$ for $t \in\left(t_{i}, t_{i+1}\right]$. Then

$$
M(h)_{T}=\exp \left\{\sum_{i} c_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i} c_{i}^{2}\left(t_{i+1}-t_{i}\right)\right\} .
$$

Since $\int_{\Omega} H \Phi d P=0$ for any $\Phi \in \mathbb{L}$, so that

$$
\int_{\Omega} H \exp \left\{\sum_{i} c_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i} c_{i}^{2}\left(t_{i+1}-t_{i}\right)\right\} \mathrm{d} P=0 .
$$

The deterministic, positive term $e^{-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i} c_{i}^{2}\left(t_{i+1}-t_{i}\right)}$ can be removed from the integrand, and it follows therefore that

$$
\int_{\Omega} H \exp \left\{\sum_{i} c_{i}\left(B_{t_{i+1}}-B_{t_{i}}\right)\right\} \mathrm{d} P=0 .
$$

Since the $c_{i}$ are arbitrary constants,

$$
\int_{\Omega} H \exp \left\{\sum_{i} c_{i} B_{t_{i}}\right\} \mathrm{d} P=0
$$

for any $c_{i}$ and $t_{i} \in[0, T]$. Since the left-hand side is analytic in $c_{i}$, the equality remains true for any complex numbers $c_{i}$. If $\phi \in C_{0}^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$, then

$$
\phi(x)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \hat{\phi}(z) e^{i\langle z, x\rangle} \mathrm{d} z
$$

where

$$
\hat{\phi}(z)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \phi(x) e^{-i\langle z, x\rangle} \mathrm{d} x
$$

is the Fourier transform of $\phi$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\Omega} H \phi\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right) \mathrm{d} P & =\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \int_{\Omega}\left\{H \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \hat{\phi}(z) \exp \left(i \sum_{j} z_{j} B_{t_{j}}\right)\right\} \mathrm{d} z \mathrm{~d} P \\
& =\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}\left\{\hat{\phi}(z) \int_{\Omega} H \exp \left(i \sum_{i} z_{i} B_{t_{i}}\right) \mathrm{d} P\right\} \mathrm{d} z \\
& =0
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, for any $\phi \in C_{0}^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\Omega} H \phi\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right) \mathrm{d} P=0 \tag{5.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Lemma 5.7.2, the collection of all functions of the form $\phi\left(B_{t_{1}}, \cdots, B_{t_{n}}\right)$ is dense in $L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$, so that

$$
\int_{\Omega} H G \mathrm{~d} P=0 \quad \text { for any } G \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)
$$

In particular, $\int_{\Omega} H^{2} \mathrm{~d} \mathbb{P}=0$ so that $H=0$.
Theorem 5.7.4 (Itô's representation theorem) Let $\xi \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{T}, P\right)$. Then there is a process $F=\left(F_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0} \in \mathcal{L}_{2}$, such that

$$
\xi=E(\xi)+\int_{0}^{T} F_{t} d B_{t}
$$

Proof. By Lemma 5.7.3 we only need to show this result for $\xi=X(h)_{T}$ (where $h \in L^{2}([0, T])$ ) defined by (5.24). As $X(h)_{t}$ is an exponential martingale it must satisfy the following integral equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
X(h)_{T} & =1+\int_{0}^{T} X(h)_{t} \mathrm{~d}\left(\int_{0}^{t} h(s) \mathrm{d} B_{s}\right) \\
& =E\left(X(h)_{T}\right)+\int_{0}^{T} X(h)_{t} h(t) \mathrm{d} B_{t}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore taking $F_{t}=X(h)_{t} h(t)$ gives the representation.
The martingale representation theorem now follows easily from the martingale property and Itô's representation theorem.

## Chapter 6

## Stochastic differential equations

The main goal of this chapter is to establish the basic existence and uniqueness theory for a class of stochastic differential equations which are important in applications.

### 6.1 Introduction

Stochastic differential equations (SDE) are ordinary differential equations perturbed by noise. We will consider a simple class of noises modelled by Brownian motion. Thus we consider the following type of equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}^{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_{i}^{j}\left(t, X_{t}\right) d B_{t}^{i}+f_{0}^{j}\left(t, X_{t}\right) d t, \quad j=1, \cdots, N \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $B_{t}=\left(B_{t}^{1}, \cdots, B_{t}^{n}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a standard Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$, and

$$
f_{i}^{j}:[0,+\infty) \times \mathbb{R}^{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N}
$$

are Borel measurable functions. Of course, the differential equation (6.1) should be interpreted as an integral equation using Itô's integration theory. More precisely, an adapted, continuous, $\mathbb{R}^{N}$-valued stochastic process $X_{t} \equiv$ ( $X_{t}^{1}, \cdots, X_{t}^{N}$ ) is a solution of (6.1), if

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{t}^{j}=X_{0}^{j}+\sum_{k=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t} f_{k}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d B_{s}^{k}+\int_{0}^{t} f_{0}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d s \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $j=1, \cdots, N$. Since we are concerned only with the distribution determined by the solution $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ of (6.1), we therefore expect that any solution of the SDE (6.1) should have the same distribution for any Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. Thus we are led to different concepts of existence and uniqueness of solutions: strong solutions and weak solutions, pathwise uniqueness and uniqueness in law.

Definition 6.1.1 1) An adapted, continuous, $\mathbb{R}^{N}$-valued stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ is a (weak) solution of (6.1), if there is a Brownian motion $W=\left(W_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, adapted to the filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)$, such that

$$
X_{t}^{j}-X_{0}^{j}=\sum_{l=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t} f_{l}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d W_{s}^{l}+\int_{0}^{t} f_{0}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d s, \quad j=1, \cdots, N .
$$

In this case we also call the pair $(X, W)$ a (weak) solution of (6.1).
2) Given a standard Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ with its natural filtration $\left(\mathcal{F}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$, an adapted, continuous stochastic process $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ is a strong solution of (6.1), if

$$
X_{t}^{j}-X_{0}^{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t} f_{i}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d B_{s}^{i}+\int_{0}^{t} f_{0}^{j}\left(s, X_{s}\right) d s
$$

We also have different concepts of uniqueness.
Definition 6.1.2 Consider the SDE (6.1).

1. We say that pathwise uniqueness holds for (6.1), if whenever $(X, B)$ and $(\widetilde{X}, B)$ are two solutions defined on the same filtered space and with the same Brownian motion $B$, and $X_{0}=\widetilde{X}_{0}$, then $X=\widetilde{X}$.
2. It is said that uniqueness in law holds for (6.1), if $(X, B)$ and $(\widetilde{X}, \widetilde{B})$ are two solutions (with possibly different Brownian motions $B$ and $\widetilde{B}$, which may even be defined on different probability spaces), and $X_{0}$ and $\widetilde{X}_{0}$ possess the same distribution, then $X$ and $\widetilde{X}$ have same distribution.

We quote an important result connecting these different notions.
Theorem 6.1.3 (Yamada-Watanabe) Existence of weak solutions which are pathwise unique implies the existence of strong solutions as well as uniqueness in law.

The following is a simple example of an SDE which has no strong solution, but possesses weak solutions and uniqueness in law holds.

Example 6.1.4 (H. Tanaka) Consider the 1-dimensional stochastic differential equation:

$$
X_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \operatorname{sgn}\left(X_{s}\right) d B_{s}, \quad 0 \leq t<\infty
$$

where $\operatorname{sgn}(x)=1$ if $x \geq 0$, and equals -1 for negative value of $x$.

1. Uniqueness in law holds, since $X$ is a standard Brownian motion by applying Lévy's characterization of BM.
2. If $(X, B)$ is a weak solution, then symmetry shows that $(-X, B)$ is also a weak solution.
3. There is a weak solution. Let $W_{t}$ be a one-dimensional Brownian motion, and let $B_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \operatorname{sgn}\left(W_{s}\right) d W_{s}$. Then $B$ is a one-dimensional Brownian motion, and

$$
W_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \operatorname{sgn}\left(W_{s}\right) d B_{s}
$$

so that $(W, B)$ is a weak solution.
4. Pathwise uniqueness does not hold by 2 .
5. There is no strong solution.

### 6.2 Several examples

### 6.2.1 Linear-Gaussian diffusions

Linear stochastic differential equations can be solved explicitly. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}^{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_{i}^{j} d B_{t}^{i}+\sum_{k=1}^{N} \beta_{k}^{j} X_{t}^{k} d t \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

$(j=1, \cdots, N)$, where $B$ is a Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{n}, \sigma=\left(\sigma_{i}^{j}\right)$ a constant $N \times n$ matrix, and $\beta=\left(\beta_{k}^{j}\right)$ a constant $N \times N$ matrix. (6.3) may be written as

$$
d X_{t}=\sigma d B_{t}+\beta X_{t} d t .
$$

Let

$$
e^{\beta t}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^{k}}{k!} \beta^{k}
$$

be the exponential of the square matrix $\beta$. Using Itô's formula, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^{-\beta t} X_{t}-X_{0} & =\int_{0}^{t} e^{-\beta s} d X_{s}-\int_{0}^{t} e^{-\beta s} \beta X_{s} d s \\
& =\int_{0}^{t} e^{-\beta s}\left(d X_{s}-\beta X_{s} d s\right) \\
& =\int_{0}^{t} e^{-\beta s} \sigma d B_{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
X_{t}=e^{\beta t} X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} e^{\beta(t-s)} \sigma \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

In particular, if $X_{0}=x$, then $X_{t}$ has a normal distribution with mean $e^{\beta t} x$. For example, if $n=N=1$, then

$$
X_{t} \sim N\left(e^{\beta t} x, \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)\right) .
$$

It can be shown that $\left(X_{t}\right)$ is a diffusion process, and thus its distribution can be described by its probability transition function $P_{t}(x, d z)$. By definition

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x) & \equiv \int_{\mathbb{R}^{N}} f(z) P_{t}(x, d z) \\
& =E\left(f\left(X_{t}\right) \mid X_{0}=x\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x) & =E\left(f\left(X_{t}\right) \mid X_{0}=x\right) \\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(z) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)}} \exp \left(-\frac{\left|z-e^{\beta t} x\right|^{2}}{\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)}\right) d z \\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}} f\left(e^{\beta t} x+\sqrt{\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)} z\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} \exp \left(-\frac{|z|^{2}}{2}\right) d z \\
& =E f\left(e^{\beta t} x+\sqrt{\left.\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right) \xi\right)}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\xi$ has the standard normal distribution $N(0,1)$. From the second line of the above formula, by comparison with the definition of $P_{t}(x, d z)$, we can conclude that

$$
P_{t}(x, d z)=p(t, x, z) d z
$$

with

$$
p(t, x, z)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)}} \exp \left(-\frac{\left|z-e^{\beta t} x\right|^{2}}{\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right)}\right) .
$$

$p(t, x, z)$ is called the transition density of the diffusion process $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$. The above formula, has a probabilistic representation

$$
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x)=E f\left(e^{\beta t} x+\sqrt{\left.\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2}\left(e^{2 \beta t}-1\right) \xi\right)}\right.
$$

which is useful in some computations.
Remark 6.2.1 It is easy to see from the above representation that

$$
\frac{d}{d x}\left(P_{t} f\right)=e^{\beta t} P_{t}\left(\frac{d}{d x} f\right) .
$$

The distribution of $\left(X_{t}\right)$ is determined by the transition density $p(t, x, z)$. Indeed, for any $0<t_{1}<\cdots<t_{k}$, the joint distribution of $\left(X_{t_{1}}, \cdots, X_{t_{k}}\right)$ is Gaussian, and its pdf is

$$
p\left(t_{1}, x, z_{1}\right) p\left(t_{2}-t_{1}, z_{1}, z_{2}\right) \cdots p\left(t_{k}-t_{k-1}, z_{k-1}, z_{k}\right) .
$$

If $B=\left(B_{t}^{1}, \cdots, B_{t}^{n}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, then the solution $X_{t}$ of the SDE:

$$
d X_{t}=d B_{t}-\left(A X_{t}\right) d t
$$

is called the Ornstein-Uhlenbeck process, where $A \geq 0$ is a $d \times d$ matrix called the drift matrix. Hence we have

$$
X_{t}=e^{-A t} X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} e^{-(t-s) A} d B_{s}
$$

Exercise 6.2.2 If $X_{0}=x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, compute $E f\left(X_{t}\right)$, where $X_{t}$ is the OrnsteinUhlenbeck process with drift matrix $A$.

### 6.2.2 Geometric Brownian motion

The Black-Scholes model of Mathematical Finance satisfies the stochastic differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
d S_{t}=S_{t}\left(\mu d t+\sigma d B_{t}\right) \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

By construction the solution to (6.4) is the stochastic exponential of

$$
\int_{0}^{t} \mu d s+\int_{0}^{t} \sigma d B_{s} .
$$

Hence

$$
S_{t}=S_{0} \exp \left(\int_{0}^{t} \sigma d B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t}\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) d s\right) .
$$

In the case $\sigma$ and $\mu$ are constants, then

$$
S_{t}=S_{0} \exp \left(\sigma B_{t}+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t\right)
$$

which is called geometric Brownian motion. If $S_{0}=x>0$, then $S_{t}$ remains positive, and

$$
\log S_{t}=\log x+\sigma B_{t}+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t
$$

has a normal distribution with mean $\log x+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$. Again, as a solution to the stochastic differential equation (6.4), $\left(S_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a diffusion process, its distribution is determined by its transition function $P_{t}(x, d z)$ (unfortunately we have to use the same notation as in the last sub-section), and according to the definition

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(z) P_{t}(x, d z) & =E\left(f\left(X_{t}\right) \mid X_{0}=x\right) \\
& =E\left(f\left(x e^{\sigma B_{t}+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}\right)\right) \\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}} f\left(x e^{\sigma z+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} e^{-\frac{z^{2}}{2 \pi t}} d z \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty} f(y) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \frac{1}{\sigma y} e^{-\frac{1}{2 \pi t}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma} \log \frac{y}{x}-\left(\frac{\mu}{\sigma}-\frac{1}{2} \sigma\right)\right)^{2}} d y
\end{aligned}
$$

where we assume that $\sigma>0$ and have made the change of variables

$$
x e^{\sigma z+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}=y .
$$

As usual, we define $\left(P_{t} f\right)(x)=\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(z) P_{t}(x, d z)$. By the third line of the previous formula

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x) & =\int_{\mathbb{R}} f\left(x e^{\sigma z+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} e^{-\frac{z^{2}}{2 \pi t}} d z \\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}} f\left(x e^{\sigma \sqrt{ } t y+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} e^{-\frac{y^{2}}{2 \pi}} d y \\
& =E\left(f\left(x e^{\sigma \sqrt{t} \xi+\left(\mu-\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2}\right) t}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(we have made a change of variable $z=s q r t t y$ ), where $\xi \sim N(0,1)$. Comparing with the definition of $P_{t}(x, d y)$ we have

$$
P_{t}(x, d y)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \frac{1}{\sigma y} e^{-\frac{1}{2 \pi t}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma} \log \frac{y}{x}-\left(\frac{\mu}{\sigma}-\frac{1}{2} \sigma\right)\right)^{2}} d y \quad \text { on }(0,+\infty)
$$

That is, $\left(S_{t}\right)$ has the transition density

$$
p(t, x, y)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \frac{1}{\sigma y} e^{-\frac{1}{2 \pi t}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma} \log \frac{y}{x}-\left(\frac{\mu}{\sigma}-\frac{1}{2} \sigma\right)\right)^{2}} \quad \text { on }(0,+\infty)
$$

and, therefore, for geometric Brownian motion

$$
\left(P_{t} f\right)(x)=\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi t}} \frac{1}{\sigma y} e^{-\frac{1}{2 \pi t}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma} \log \frac{y}{x}-\left(\frac{\mu}{\sigma}-\frac{1}{2} \sigma\right)\right)^{2}} f(y) d y
$$

for any $x>0$.

### 6.2.3 The Cameron-Martin formula

Consider a simple stochastic differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}=d B_{t}+b\left(t, X_{t}\right) d t \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $b(t, x)$ is a bounded, Borel measurable function on $[0,+\infty) \times \mathbb{R}$. We may solve (6.5) by the technique of change of probability measure.

Let $\left(W_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard Brownian motion on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$, and define a probability measure $Q$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{\infty}\right)$ by

$$
\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=\mathcal{E}(N)_{t} \quad \text { for all } \quad t \geq 0
$$

where $N_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{s}$ is a martingale (under the probability measure $P)$, with $\langle N\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s$, which is bounded on any finite interval. Hence

$$
\mathcal{E}(N)_{t}=\exp \left(\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{s}-\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right)
$$

is a martingale. According to Girsanov's theorem

$$
B_{t} \equiv W_{t}-W_{0}-\langle W, N\rangle_{t}
$$

is a martingale under the probability measure $Q$, and $\langle B\rangle_{t}=\langle W\rangle_{t}=t$. By Lévy's martingale characterization of Brownian motion, $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a Brownian motion. Moreover

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle W, N\rangle_{t} & =\left\langle\int_{0}^{t} \mathrm{~d} W_{s}, \int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} W_{s}\right\rangle \\
& =\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

and therefore

$$
W_{t}-W_{0}-\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s=B_{t}
$$

is a standard Brownian motion on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, Q)$. Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{t}=W_{0}+B_{t}+\int_{0}^{t} b\left(s, W_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that $\left(W_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{\infty}, Q\right)$ is a solution of (6.5). The solution we have just constructed is a weak solution of SDE (6.5).

Theorem 6.2.3 (Cameron-Martin formula) Let $b(t, x)=\left(b^{1}(t, x), \cdots, b^{n}(t, x)\right)$ be bounded, Borel measurable functions on $[0,+\infty) \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$. Let $W_{t}=\left(W^{1}, \cdots, W_{t}^{n}\right)$ be a standard Brownian motion on a filtered probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}, P)$, and let $\mathcal{F}_{\infty}=\sigma\left\{\mathcal{F}_{t}, t \geq 0\right\}$. Define a probability measure $Q$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{\infty}\right)$ by

$$
\left.\frac{d Q}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=e^{\sum_{k=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t} b^{k}\left(s, W_{s}\right) d B_{s}^{k}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t}\left|b^{k}\left(s, W_{s}\right)\right|^{2} d s} \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq 0 .
$$

Then $\left(W_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ under the probability measure $Q$ is a solution to

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}^{j}=d B_{t}^{j}+b^{j}\left(t, X_{t}\right) d t \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some Brownian motion $\left(B_{t}^{1}, \cdots, B_{t}^{n}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ under the probability measure $Q$.

On the other hand, if $\left(X_{t}\right)$ is a solution of $\operatorname{SDE}$ (6.7) on some probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ and we define $\tilde{P}$ by

$$
\left.\frac{d \tilde{P}}{d P}\right|_{\mathcal{F}_{t}}=\exp \left\{-\sum_{k=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t} b^{k}\left(s, X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}^{k}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \int_{0}^{t}\left|b^{k}\left(s, X_{s}\right)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right\} \quad \text { for } t \geq 0
$$

we may show that $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ under the probability measure $\tilde{P}$ is a Brownian motion. Therefore the solution to the $\operatorname{SDE}$ (6.7) is unique in law: all solutions have the same distribution.

### 6.3 Existence and uniqueness

In this section we present a fundamental result on the existence and uniqueness of strong solutions.

### 6.3.1 Strong solutions: existence and uniqueness

By definition, any strong solution is a weak solution. We next prove a basic existence and uniqueness theorem for a stochastic differential equation under a global Lipschitz condition. Our proof will rely on two inequalities: The Gronwall inequality and Doob's $L^{p}$-inequality (Theorem 3.2.5).

Lemma 6.3.1 (The Gronwall inequality) If a non-negative function $g$ satisfies the integral equation

$$
g(t) \leq h(t)+\alpha \int_{0}^{t} g(s) d s, \quad 0 \leq t \leq T
$$

where $\alpha$ is a constant and $h:[0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is an integrable function, then

$$
g(t) \leq h(t)+\alpha \int_{0}^{t} e^{\alpha(t-s)} h(s) d s, \quad 0 \leq t \leq T
$$

Proof. Let $F(t)=\int_{0}^{t} g(s) \mathrm{d} s$. Then $F(0)=0$ and

$$
F^{\prime}(t) \leq h(t)+\alpha F(t)
$$

so that

$$
\left(e^{-\alpha t} F(t)\right)^{\prime} \leq e^{-\alpha t} h(t) .
$$

Integrating the differential inequality we obtain

$$
\int_{0}^{t}\left(e^{-\alpha s} F(s)\right)^{\prime} \mathrm{d} s \leq \int_{0}^{t} e^{-\alpha s} h(s) \mathrm{d} s
$$

and therefore

$$
F(t) \leq \int_{0}^{t} e^{\alpha(t-s)} h(s) \mathrm{d} s
$$

which yields Gronwall's inequality.
Consider the following stochastic differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}^{j}=\sum_{l=1}^{n} f_{l}^{j}\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{t}^{l}+f_{0}^{j}\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} t ; \quad j=1, \cdots, N \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f_{k}^{j}(t, x)$ are Borel measurable functions on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}^{N}$, which are bounded on any compact subset in $\mathbb{R}^{N}$. We are going to show the existence and uniqueness of strong solutions by Picard iteration. The main ingredient in the proof is a special case of Doob's $L^{p}$ - inequality: if $\left(M_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a squareintegrable, continuous martingale with $M_{0}=0$, then for any $t>0$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E\left\{\sup _{s \leq t}\left|M_{s}\right|^{2}\right\} \leq 4 \sup _{s \leq t} E\left(\left|M_{s}\right|^{2}\right)=4 E\langle M\rangle_{t} . \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma 6.3.2 Let $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be a standard $B M$ in $\mathbb{R}$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{t}, \mathcal{F}, P\right)$, and $\left(Z_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ and $\left(\tilde{Z}_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be two continuous, adapted processes. Let $f(t, x)$ be a Lipschitz function

$$
|f(t, x)-f(t, y)| \leq C|x-y| ; \quad \forall t \geq 0, \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}
$$

for some constant $C$.

1. Let

$$
M_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, Z_{s}\right) d B_{s}-\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right) d B_{s} \quad \forall t \geq 0
$$

Then

$$
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|M_{s}\right|^{2} \leq 4 C^{2} \int_{0}^{t} E\left|Z_{s}-\tilde{Z}_{s}\right|^{2} d s
$$

for all $t \geq 0$.
2. If

$$
N_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, Z_{s}\right) d s-\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right) d s \quad \forall t \geq 0
$$

then

$$
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|N_{s}\right|^{2} \leq C^{2} t \int_{0}^{t} E\left|Z_{s}-\tilde{Z}_{s}\right|^{2} d s \quad \forall t \geq 0 .
$$

Proof. To prove the first statement, we notice that

$$
\sup _{s \leq t}\left|M_{s}\right|^{2}=\sup _{s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s}\left(f\left(u, Z_{u}\right)-f\left(u, \tilde{Z}_{u}\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{u}\right|^{2}
$$

so that, by Doob's $L^{2}$-inequality

$$
\begin{aligned}
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|M_{s}\right|^{2} & =E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s}\left(f\left(u, Z_{u}\right)-f\left(u, \tilde{Z}_{u}\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{u}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq 4 E\left|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(s, Z_{s}\right)-f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}\right|^{2} \\
& =4 E \int_{0}^{t}\left|f\left(s, Z_{s}\right)-f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \\
& \leq 4 C^{2} \int_{0}^{t} E\left|Z_{s}-\tilde{Z}_{s}\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

Next we prove the second claim. Indeed

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup _{s \leq t}\left|N_{s}\right|^{2} & =\sup _{s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s}\left(f\left(u, Z_{u}\right)-f\left(u, \tilde{Z}_{u}\right)\right) \mathrm{d} u\right|^{2} \\
& \leq\left(\int_{0}^{t}\left|f\left(s, Z_{s}\right)-f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right)\right| \mathrm{d} s\right)^{2} \\
& \leq t \int_{0}^{t}\left|f\left(s, Z_{s}\right)-f\left(s, \tilde{Z}_{s}\right)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \\
& \leq C^{2} t \int_{0}^{t}\left|Z_{s}-\tilde{Z}_{s}\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

where the second inequality follows from the Schwartz inequality.
Theorem 6.3.3 Consider SDE (6.8). Suppose that $f_{i}^{j}$ for $i=1, \ldots, n, j=$ $1, \ldots, N$ satisfy the Lipschitz condition:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f_{i}^{j}(t, x)-f_{i}^{j}(t, y)\right| \leq C|x-y| \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the linear-growth condition:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f_{i}^{j}(t, x)\right| \leq C(1+|x|) \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $t \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$and $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{N}$. Then for any $\eta \in L^{2}\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}_{0}, P\right)$ and a standard Brownian motion $B_{t}=\left(B_{t}^{i}\right)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, there is a unique strong solution $\left(X_{t}\right)$ of (6.8) with $X_{0}=\eta$.

Proof. For simplicity, let us prove a special case of this important theorem: the existence and uniqueness of solutions for the one-dimensional stochastic differential equation

$$
d X_{t}=f\left(t, X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{t}, \quad X_{0}=\eta
$$

and leave the details of the proof for the general case as an exercise. As in the case of ODEs, we construct an approximation solution via Picard iteration. Let

$$
Y_{0}(t)=\eta
$$

and set

$$
Y_{n+1}(t)=\eta+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, Y_{n}(s)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s},
$$

for $n=0,1,2, \cdots$. We are going to show that, for every $T>0$, the sequence $\left\{Y_{n}(t)\right\}$ converges to a solution $Y(t)$ uniformly on $[0, T]$ almost surely. Note that every $Y_{n}$ is a continuous square-integrable martingale. Indeed

$$
\begin{aligned}
E \sup _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left|Y_{1}(s)-Y_{0}(s)\right|^{2} & \leq E \sup _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left(\int_{0}^{s}|f(\tau, \eta)| \mathrm{d} B_{\tau}\right)^{2} \\
& \leq 4 E \int_{0}^{t} f(\tau, \eta)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \\
& \leq 8 t C\left(1+E \eta^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and, for any $t \leq T$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{n+1}(s)-Y_{n}(s)\right|^{2} & =E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s}\left(f\left(r, Y_{n}(r)\right)-f\left(r, Y_{n-1}(r)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{r}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq 4 E \int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(s, Y_{n}(s)\right)-f\left(s, Y_{n-1}(s)\right)\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

where the second inequality follows from Kolmogorov's inequality. As $f$ is Lipschitz continuous, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(s, Y_{n}(s)\right)-f\left(s, Y_{n-1}(s)\right)\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \\
\leq & C^{2} \int_{0}^{t}\left|Y_{n}(s)-Y_{n-1}(s)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s \\
\leq & C^{2} t \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{n}(t)-Y_{n-1}(t)\right|^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Combining this with the previous inequality, we obtain

$$
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{n+1}(s)-Y_{n}(s)\right|^{2} \leq 4 C^{2} t E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{n}(t)-Y_{n-1}(t)\right|^{2}
$$

for any $t \leq T$, and therefore

$$
E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{n+1}(s)-Y_{n}(s)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{\left(4 C^{2}\right)^{n} t^{n}}{n!} E \sup _{s \leq t}\left|Y_{1}(t)-Y_{0}(t)\right|^{2}
$$

for all $t \leq T$. In particular

$$
E \sup _{s \leq T}\left|Y_{n+1}(t)-Y_{n}(t)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{\left(4 C^{2}\right)^{n} T^{n}}{n!} E \sup _{s \leq T}\left|Y_{1}(t)-Y_{0}(t)\right|^{2}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E \sup _{s \leq T}\left|Y_{n+1}(t)-Y_{n}(t)\right|^{2} & \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\left(4 C^{2}\right)^{n} T^{n}}{n!} E \sup _{s \leq T}\left|Y_{1}(t)-Y_{0}(t)\right|^{2} \\
& <\infty .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $\left\{Y_{n}: n \geq 1\right\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $\mathcal{M}^{2}$, so that

$$
Y_{n}(t) \rightarrow X_{t} \quad \text { uniformly on }[0, T], \quad P \text {-a.s. }
$$

It is easy to see that $\left(X_{t}\right)$ is a strong solution of the stochastic differential equation.

Next we prove the uniqueness. Let $Y$ and $Z$ be two solutions with the same Brownian motion $B$. Then

$$
Y_{t}=\eta+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, Y_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

and

$$
Z_{t}=\eta+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(s, Z_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

Then, as in the proof of the existence,

$$
E\left(\left|Y_{t}-Z_{t}\right|^{2}\right) \leq 4 C^{2} \int_{0}^{t} E\left|Y_{s}-Z_{s}\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
$$

The Gronwall inequality implies thus that

$$
E\left(\left|Y_{t}-Z_{t}\right|^{2}\right)=0
$$

giving the uniqueness.

Remark 6.3.4 The sequence of iterations $Y_{n}$ constructed in the proof of Theorem 6.3.3 is a function of the Brownian motion $B$, and $Y_{n}(t)$ only depends on $\eta$ and $B_{s}, 0 \leq s \leq t$.

### 6.3.2 Continuity in the initial conditions

Theorem 6.3.5 We make the same assumptions as in Theorem 6.3.3. Given a $B M B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$, let $\left(X^{x}(t)\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be the unique strong solution of (6.8). Then $x \rightarrow X^{x}$ is uniformly continuous almost surely on any finite interval $[0, T]$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{\delta \downarrow 0} \sup _{|x-y|<\delta} E\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|X^{x}(t)-X^{y}(t)\right|^{2}\right\}=0 \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. We only consider the 1-dimensional case. Thus

$$
X^{x}(t)=x+\int_{0}^{t} f_{1}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} f_{0}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

and

$$
X^{y}(t)=y+\int_{0}^{t} f_{1}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} f_{0}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

Therefore, by Doob's maximal inequality,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|X^{x}(t)-X^{y}(t)\right|^{2}\right\} \leq 3|x-y|^{2} \\
& +3 E\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f_{1}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right)-f_{1}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}\right|^{2}\right\} \\
& +3 E\left\{\sup _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f_{0}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right)-f_{0}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} s\right|^{2}\right\} \\
\leq & 3|x-y|^{2}+12 E\left\{\left|\int_{0}^{T}\left(f_{1}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right)-f_{1}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}\right|^{2}\right\} \\
& +3 T E\left\{\int_{0}^{T}\left|f_{0}\left(X^{x}(s)\right)-f_{0}\left(X^{y}(s)\right)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right\} \\
\leq & 3|x-y|^{2}+12 E\left\{\int_{0}^{T}\left|f_{1}\left(s, X^{x}(s)\right)-f_{1}\left(s, X^{y}(s)\right)\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} s\right\} \\
& +3 T C^{2} E\left\{\int_{0}^{T}\left|X^{x}(s)-X^{y}(s)\right|^{2} d s\right\} \\
\leq & 3|x-y|^{2}+3 C^{2}(4+T) \int_{0}^{T} E\left(\left|X^{x}(t)-X^{y}(t)\right|^{2}\right) \mathrm{d} t .
\end{aligned}
$$

Setting

$$
\Delta(t)=E\left\{\sup _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left|X^{x}(s)-X^{y}(s)\right|^{2}\right\},
$$

then we have

$$
\Delta(T) \leq 3|x-y|^{2}+3 C^{2}(4+T) \int_{0}^{T} \Delta(t) d t
$$

and therefore by Gronwall's inequality

$$
\Delta(T) \leq 6|x-y|^{2} \exp \left(12 C^{2}+3 T C^{2}\right)
$$

which yields (6.12).

### 6.4 Martingales and weak solutions

For simplicity, let us consider the following one-dimensional, homogenous SDE

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}=\sigma\left(X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{t}+b\left(X_{t}\right) \mathrm{d} t \tag{6.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sigma \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ is a positive smooth function with at most linear growth, and $b \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ has at most linear growth. Let $X=\left(X_{t}\right)_{\geq 0}$ be the strong solution with initial value $X_{0}$ on a filtered probability space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$. If $f \in C_{b}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{N}, \mathbb{R}\right)$, then by Itô's formula

$$
\begin{aligned}
f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)= & \int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} X_{s}+\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime \prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d}\langle X\rangle_{s} \\
= & \int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime}\left(X_{s}\right)\left(\sigma\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+b\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t} f^{\prime \prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \sigma^{2}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s \\
= & \int_{0}^{t} \sigma\left(X_{s}\right) f^{\prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t}\left\{\frac{1}{2} \sigma^{2} f^{\prime \prime}+b f^{\prime}\right\}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let us introduce

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\frac{1}{2} \sigma(x)^{2} \frac{d^{2}}{d x^{2}}+b(x) \frac{d}{d x} \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is an elliptic differential operator of second-order. Then the previous formula may be written as

$$
f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)=\int_{0}^{t} \sigma\left(X_{s}\right) f^{\prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t}(L f)\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

If we set

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t}(L f)\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

then

$$
M_{t}^{f}=\int_{0}^{t} \sigma\left(X_{s}\right) f^{\prime}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}
$$

is a continuous local martingale on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$, and

$$
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t}\left(\sigma^{2} f^{\prime}\right)\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

Lemma 6.4.1 If $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a strong solution to the $\operatorname{SDE}(6.13)$ on $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$ (with a given Brownian motion) then for any $f \in C_{b}^{2}(\mathbb{R})$

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t}(L f)\left(X_{s}\right) d s
$$

is a continuous local martingale under the probability measure $P$, where $L$ is defined by (6.14).

For example, if $\sigma=1$ and $b=0$ (in this case $L=\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^{2}}{d x^{2}}=\frac{1}{2} \Delta$ ), then $\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ itself is a strong solution to

$$
d X_{t}=d B_{t}
$$

so that

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(B_{t}\right)-f\left(B_{0}\right)-\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t}(\Delta f)\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

is a martingale under $P$. On the other hand, Lévy's martingale characterization shows that the previous property, that

$$
f\left(B_{t}\right)-f\left(B_{0}\right)-\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{t}(\Delta f)\left(B_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

is a martingale, which in particular implies that $X_{t}^{j}$ and $X_{i}^{j} X_{t}^{i}-\delta_{i j} t$ are martingales, completely characterizes Brownian motion. Therefore we may hope that the martingale property of all the $M^{f}$ should completely determine the distribution of a solution $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ to the $\operatorname{SDE}$ (6.13), and hence show the existence of a weak solution to (6.13). Thus we give

Definition 6.4.2 Let $L$ be a linear operator on $C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$. Let $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ be) a stochastic process on a filtered space $\left(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_{t}, P\right)$. Then we say that $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ together with the probability $P$ is a solution to the L-martingale problem, if for every $f \in C_{b}^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$

$$
M_{t}^{f} \equiv f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t} L f\left(X_{s}\right) d s
$$

is a local martingale under the probability $P$.
Therefore a strong solution $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ of $\operatorname{SDE}(6.13)$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is a solution to the $L$-martingale problem, where $L$ is given by (6.14):

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t} L f\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s
$$

is a martingale under $P$. Moreover, since

$$
L(f g)-f(L g)-g(L f)=\sigma^{2} f^{\prime}
$$

we thus have

$$
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t}\{L(f g)-f(L g)-g(L f)\}\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
$$

Conversely, we can show that any solution to the $L$-martingale problem is a weak solution to SDE.

Theorem 6.4.3 Let $b, \sigma$ be Borel measurable functions on $\mathbb{R}$ which are bounded on any compact subset, and with $\sigma>0$. Let

$$
L=\frac{1}{2} \sigma(x)^{2} \frac{d^{2}}{d x^{2}}+b(x) \frac{d}{d x} .
$$

If $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is a continuous process solving the L-martingale problem: for any $f \in C_{b}^{2}(\mathbb{R})$

$$
M_{t}^{f}=f\left(X_{t}\right)-f\left(X_{0}\right)-\int_{0}^{t} L f\left(X_{s}\right) d s
$$

is a continuous local martingale, then $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is a weak solution to the SDE

$$
\begin{equation*}
d X_{t}=\sigma\left(X_{t}\right) d B_{t}+b\left(X_{t}\right) d t . \tag{6.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

We give an outline of the proof. To show $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$ is a weak solution, we need to construct a Brownian motion $B=\left(B_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{t}=X_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} \sigma\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} B_{s}+\int_{0}^{t} b\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s . \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The key to the proof is to compute $\langle X\rangle_{t}$, and the result is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle M^{f}, M^{g}\right\rangle_{t} & =\int_{0}^{t}(L(f g)-f L g-g L f)\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s \\
& =\int_{0}^{t}\left(\sigma^{2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}\right)\left(X_{s}\right) \mathrm{d} s .
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, if we choose $f(x)=x$ the coordinate function (and write in this case $M^{f}$ as $M$ ), then

$$
\langle M\rangle_{t}=\int_{0}^{t}\left(\sigma\left(X_{s}\right)\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} s
$$

so that

$$
B_{t}=\int_{0}^{t} \frac{1}{\sigma\left(X_{s}\right)} \mathrm{d} M_{s}
$$

is a Brownian motion (by Lévy's martingale characterization for Brownian motion). It is then obvious that $\left(X_{t}, B_{t}\right)$ satisfies the stochastic integral equation (6.16), so that $\left(X_{t}\right)_{t \geq 0}$ is a weak solution to (6.15).

For the one-dimensional case more precise results are available due to Engelbert and Schmidt, see for instance Kallenberg.

